Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme

NATIONAL STRATEGIC PLAN FOR TUBERCULOSIS: 2017-25 ELIMINATION BY 2025

March 2017

Ministry of Health with Family Welfare, Nirman Bhawan, New Delhi – 110 108
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acronyms</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgments</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Summary</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 1 Introduction</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 2 Developing the NSP</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 3 Programme indicators</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 4 Laboratory systems and Diagnosis</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 5 CASE FINDING</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 6 Patients in Private Sector</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 7 Treatment Services</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 8 Priority Populations</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 9 Patient Support Systems</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 10 Air borne infection control</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 11 Preventive therapy/ latent TB infection treatment/ contact screening</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 12 Urban TB control systems</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 13 Health System Strengthening</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 14 Advocacy, Communication and Social Mobilization</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 15 Surveillance, Monitoring and Evaluation</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 16 Research</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 17 TECHNICAL Assistance</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 18 Procurement and Supply Chain Management</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 19 Costing and Financing the NSP</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 20 Implementation of the NSP</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendices</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex A. Diagnostic algorithm in RNTCc</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex B: ICT initiatives</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex C. research priorities</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex D. Research from RNTCP published in peer reviewed journals 2012-2017</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex E: Compilation of Social Welfare schemes, applicable to TB patients</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex F: Notification of all TB patients</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norms and Basis of Costing for RNTCP</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ACRONYMS

AIDS Acquired Immuno-Deficiency Syndrome
ACSM Advocacy Communication with Social Mobilisation
ANM Auxiliary Nurse Midwife
ART Anti-Retroviral Therapy
ARTI Annual Risk of Tuberculosis Infection
ASHA Accredited Social Health Activist
AWW Anganwadi Worker
BPHC Block Primary Health Centre
BPL Below Poverty Line
CAP College of American Pathologist
CCC Community Care Centres
CDHO Chief District Health Officer
CDMO Chief District Medical Officer
CFR Case Finding Report
CSO Civil Society Organisation
CGHS Central Government Health Scheme
CHC Community Health Centre
CIDA Canadian International Development Agency
CMO Chief Medical Officer
CTD Central TB Division
CPT Cotrimoxazole Preventive Therapy
DR Drug resistant
DS Drug sensitive
DBT Direct Benefit Transfer
DCC District Coordinating Committee
DDG Deputy Director General, TB
DEO Data Entry Operator
DFID Department for International Development, of the United Kingdom
DGHS Directorate General of Health Services
DLN District Level Network of PLHIV
DM District Magistrate
DMC Designated Microscopy Centre
DOT Directly Observed Treatment
DOTS Directly Observed Treatment, Short-Course
DPM Deputy Programmer Manager
DRS Drug Resistance Surveillances
DST Drug Sensitivity Testing
DR-TB Drug resistant tuberculosis
DS-TB Drug Sensitive Tuberculosis
DTC District Tuberculosis Centre
DTCS District TB Control Society
DTO District Tuberculosis Officer
EPTB Extra pulmonary Tuberculosis
EQA External Quality Assessment
ESI Employees State Insurance
ESR Erythrocyte Sedimentation Rate
FBO Faith Based Organisation
FICTC Facility Integrated Counselling and Testing Centre
FNAC Fine Needle Aspiration Cytology
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GDF</td>
<td>Global Drug Facility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFATM</td>
<td>Global Fund for AIDS, TB and Malaria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HA</td>
<td>Health Assistant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>Human Immune- Deficiency Virus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HRD</td>
<td>Human Resource Development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC</td>
<td>Information, Education and Communication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICF</td>
<td>Intensive Case Finding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICTC</td>
<td>Integrated Counselling and Testing Centre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ILFS</td>
<td>Infrastructure Leasing and Financial Services</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPT</td>
<td>Isoniazid Preventive Therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRLs</td>
<td>Intermediate Reference Laboratories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAC</td>
<td>Link ART Centres</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LQAS</td>
<td>Lot Quality Assurance Sampling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LRS</td>
<td>Lala Ram Swarup Institute of Tuberculosis and Respiratory Diseases. New Delhi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LT</td>
<td>Laboratory Technician</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LWS</td>
<td>Link Worker Scheme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBPH</td>
<td>Market Based Partnerships for Health</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDG</td>
<td>Millennium Development Goal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDR-TB</td>
<td>Multi Drug Resistant Tuberculosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MO</td>
<td>Medical Officer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOHFW</td>
<td>Ministry of Health with Family Welfare</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MO-TC</td>
<td>Medical Officer –Tuberculosis Control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPHS</td>
<td>Multi –Purpose Health Supervisors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPW</td>
<td>Multi-Purpose Workers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NACP</td>
<td>National AIDS Control Programme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAIICC</td>
<td>National Airborne Infection Control Committee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NARI</td>
<td>National AIDS Research Institute</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCRL</td>
<td>National Commission on Rural Labour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGO</td>
<td>Non-Governmental Organization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRLs</td>
<td>National Reference Laboratories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHM</td>
<td>National Health Mission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTRI</td>
<td>National Tuberculosis Research Institute, Chennai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSP</td>
<td>New smear positive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSP-RNTCP</td>
<td>National Strategic Plan for Tuberculosis Control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTF</td>
<td>National Task Force</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTI</td>
<td>National Tuberculosis Institute Bangalore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTP</td>
<td>National Tuberculosis Programme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUHM</td>
<td>National Urban Health Mission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPD</td>
<td>Out Patient Department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>Operational Research</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORW</td>
<td>Out Reach Worker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSE</td>
<td>On-Site Evaluation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPIA</td>
<td>Private Provider Interface agency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHC</td>
<td>Primary Health Centre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHI</td>
<td>Peripheral Health Institution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHW</td>
<td>Peripheral Health Worker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLHIV</td>
<td>People Living with HIV/AIDS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPM</td>
<td>Public Private Mix/ Partnership</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMR</td>
<td>Programme Management Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP</td>
<td>Private Practitioner</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRI</td>
<td>Panchayati Raj Institution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT</td>
<td>Preventive Therapy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTB</td>
<td>Pulmonary Tuberculosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVPI</td>
<td>Pharmacovigilance programme of India</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PWB</td>
<td>Patient Wise Box</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QA</td>
<td>Quality Assurance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QC</td>
<td>Quality Control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QI</td>
<td>Quality Improvement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBRC</td>
<td>Random Blinded Rechecking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RKS</td>
<td>Rogi Kalyan Samity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNTCP</td>
<td>Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTR</td>
<td>Results of Treatment Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA</td>
<td>Statistical Assistant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SACS</td>
<td>State AIDS Control Society</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC</td>
<td>Sub Centre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCC</td>
<td>State Coordinating Committee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC/ST</td>
<td>Scheduled Caste/ Scheduled Tribe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCR</td>
<td>Sputum Conversion Report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOE</td>
<td>Statement of Expenditure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPCB</td>
<td>State Pollution Control board</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STCS</td>
<td>State Tuberculosis Control Society</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STDC</td>
<td>State Tuberculosis Training and Demonstration Centres</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STF</td>
<td>State Task Force</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STLS</td>
<td>Senior Tuberculosis Laboratory Supervisor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STO</td>
<td>State Tuberculosis Officer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>Senior Treatment Supervisor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TB</td>
<td>Tuberculosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBHV</td>
<td>Tuberculosis Health Visitor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDCs</td>
<td>Tuberculosis diagnostic centers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH</td>
<td>Taluk Hospital</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TI</td>
<td>Targeted Intervention</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO</td>
<td>Treatment organization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSG</td>
<td>Technical Support Group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TU</td>
<td>Tuberculosis Unit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTGW</td>
<td>National Technical Working Group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USAID</td>
<td>United States Agency for International Development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCTC</td>
<td>Voluntary Testing and Counselling Centre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VHND</td>
<td>Village Health and Nutrition Day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VHSC</td>
<td>Village Health and Sanitation Committee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XDR</td>
<td>Extensively Drug Resistant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZTF</td>
<td>Zonal Task Force</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Central TB Division (CTD), Ministry of Health and Family Welfare, Government of India, wishes to express its gratitude to the numerous individuals and development partners who have worked with the Ministry to develop the National Strategic Plan 2017 – 2025 for TB Elimination by 2025.

We are grateful to all the stakeholders, academia and institutions, who contributed to the development of the document. Special gratitude goes to all the TB experts for their valuable inputs to the draft strategy during the National Consultative Meetings at Delhi in October 2016 and February/March 2017.

We also acknowledge the valuable inputs from the frontline including State TB Officers (STOs), District TB officers (DTOs) and their teams, civil society representatives, and patient representatives for their insights. CTD also appreciates all who contributed to the review and revision of the NSP.

A detailed list of the working group members is appended at Annex H.

For further information on the contents of this NSP please contact:
Dr Kuldeep Singh Sachdeva,
Deputy Director General – TB,
Central TB Division, Directorate General of Health Services,
Ministry of Health with Family Welfare, Nirman Bhawan, New Delhi – 110 108
Email: ddgtb@rntcp.org
Phone: 011 23062980
FOREWORD

“We have to defeat TB in India.”

Shri. Narendra Modi,
Honorable Prime Minister of India,
On his “Mann Ki Baat” radio address to the nation on 27th March 2016

The National Strategic Plan (NSP) sets out the strategic direction and key initiatives that the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare will undertake from 2017 to 2025 for working towards achieving the goals of eliminating TB by 2025. We have seen excellent commitment and the progress achieved through the previous NSP period, yet much more is required to be done to accelerate the march towards a TB free India.

During the previous NSP period, RNTCP had tested more than 42 million people, put more than 7 million TB cases on treatment, saving an additional 1.5 million lives. The CTD has also achieved complete geographic coverage for management of drug resistant TB and more than 100,000 MDR TB cases were diagnosed and treated. There are several landmark achievements of the previous NSP including policy and system preparedness for Universal access to TB care including mandatory notification of TB cases, development of Standard for TB Care in India, case based TB notification system – NIKSHAY, successful innovations in Private Sector engagement for TB care-UATBC, innovative use of ICT platform for real-time monitoring of treatment adherence etc. A considerable progress in addressing TB and co-morbidities, pediatric TB and urban TB control models has also been made and a major progress has been achieved in advocacy and communication areas.

In the NSP 2017-2025 we are moving towards rapidly ending the epidemic of TB in India. This necessitates a paradigm shift in approach and strategy. This NSP addresses requirements for achieving the SDG and End TB targets for India and is driven by the DETECT-TREAT-PREVENT-BUILD approach. The focus is on early diagnosis of all the TB patients, prompt treatment with the right drugs and regimens along with suitable patient support systems including financial and nutritional support. This is supplemented by prevention strategies including active case finding, contact tracing and LTBI management in high risk population, and airborne infection control. There is an urgent need for management and financial system upgradation for the TB control programme at all the levels and these issues have been addressed in the said NSP.

India is now entering an exciting phase as it is making a progressive move towards the nation’s vision for all round development. There continues to be unprecedented growth and investment in the nation’s infrastructure including health. The health sector is a part of this future and requires our continued commitment across the government sector, private sector and the civil society.

I encourage and invite all to join us for the journey towards a TB free India and a healthy future for all of our people.

Shri J P Nadda,
Honorable Union Minister of Health and Family Welfare,
Government of India
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

India is being engaged in Tuberculosis (TB) control activities for more than 50 years, yet TB continues to be India’s severe health crisis. TB kills approximately 480,000 Indians every year i.e. more than 1,400 every day. India also has more than a million ‘missing’ cases every year that are either not notified or remain undiagnosed or unaccountably and inadequately diagnosed and treated in the private sector. This tragic loss of life, continued suffering and poverty needs to end, with concerted efforts from all of us.

India is now well prepared to tackle TB than before. It possesses advanced and effective interventions and technologies for diagnosis, treatment and care of TB. This National Strategic Plan (NSP) 2017–2025 for TB elimination in India embraces these opportunities to leverage its full potential and proposes transformational changes to TB care service delivery.

Over the previous NSP period, we have made significant gains in strengthening the support structures, programme architecture and implementation environment for TB control. This includes mandatory notification of all TB cases, integration of the programme with the general health services (National Health Mission), expansion of diagnostics services, programmatic management of drug resistant TB (PMDT) service expansion, single window service for TB-HIV cases, national drug resistance surveillance and revision of partnership guidelines. However, we have to recognize that more needs to be done in order to reduce the TB incidence drastically in India. We need aspirational objectives, a thoughtful and structured approach and a supportive environment. The NSP 2017-2025 builds on the success and learnings of the last NSP and encapsulates the bold and innovative steps required to eliminate TB in India by the year 2025. It is crafted in line with other health sector strategies and global efforts, such as the draft National Health Policy 2015, World Health Organization’s (WHO) End TB Strategy and the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) of the United Nations (UN).

The NSP for TB elimination 2017 -2025

This NSP is a framework to provide guidance for the activities of stakeholders including the National and State Governments, Development Partners, Civil Society Organizations, International Agencies, Research Institutions, Private Sector, and many others whose work is relevant to TB elimination in India. The NSP 2017-2025 is a three year costed plan and an eight year strategy document. It provides goals and strategies for the country’s response to the disease during the period 2017-2025 and aims to direct the attention of all stakeholders to the most important interventions or activities that the RNTCP believes will bring about significant changes in the incidence, prevalence and mortality of TB. These strategies and interventions are in addition to the processes and activities already ongoing in the country.

As a strategic document, the subsequent operational plans will necessarily follow. The NSP will guide the development of the national project implementation plan (PIP) and state PIPs, as well as district health action plans (DHAP) under the National Health Mission (NHM). This NSP replaces previous strategies, and will inform and guide the updating of technical and operational guidelines and associated programme tools.

The development of this NSP has been a collaborative effort between all the stakeholders including national and state governments, development partners, civil society organizations, and the private sector in India which was and has been led by the Central TB Division, Directorate General of Health
Services, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare. Knowledge and insights generated from a series of workshops and consultations with the stakeholders, learnings from the implementation of the past NSP and experiences from the pilots, models and approaches tested during the last NSP period informed the strategies proposed in the current NSP.

**Vision, Goals and Targets of NSP**

The NSP proposes bold strategies with commensurate resources to rapidly decline TB incidence and mortality in India by 2025, five years ahead of the global End TB targets and Sustainable Development Goals to attain the vision of a TB-free India.  

**VISION:** TB-Free India with zero deaths, disease and poverty due to TB  

**GOAL:** To achieve a rapid decline in burden of TB, morbidity and mortality while working towards elimination of TB in India by 2025.

Table 1 below highlights the core impact, outcome indicators and targets of the NSP that highlights the four priority areas that include private sector engagement, ensuring a seamless, efficient TB care cascade, active TB case-finding among key population (socially vulnerable and clinically high risk) and preventing progression from latent TB infection (LTBI) to active TB in high risk groups.

**Table 1: Results Framework (impact and outcome indicators and targets)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPACT INDICATORS</th>
<th>Baseline</th>
<th>Target</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. To reduce estimated TB Incidence rate (per 100,000 population)</td>
<td>217 (112-355)</td>
<td>142 (76-255)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. To reduce estimated TB prevalence (per 100,000 population)</td>
<td>320 (280-380)</td>
<td>170 (159-217)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. To reduce estimated mortality due to TB (per 100,000 population)</td>
<td>32 (29-35)</td>
<td>15 (13-16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. To ensure no family should suffer catastrophic cost due to TB</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OUTCOME INDICATORS</th>
<th>Baseline</th>
<th>Target</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Total TB patient notification (in millions)</td>
<td>1.74</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Total patient Private providers notification (in millions)</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. MDR/RR TB patients notified</td>
<td>28,096</td>
<td>92,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Proportion of notified TB patients offered DST</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Proportion of notified patients initiated on treatment</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>95%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Treatment success rate among notified DSTB</td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Treatment success rate among notified DRTB</td>
<td>46%</td>
<td>65%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Proportion of identified targeted key affected population undergoing active case finding</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Proportion of notified TB patients receiving financial support through Direct Benefit Transfers (DBT)</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Proportion of identified/eligible individuals for preventive therapy / LTBI s - initiated on treatment</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>60%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Achieving the goals of NSP

TB elimination faces daunting challenges in India. Decades of unrestrained transmission has left hundreds of millions of Indians with LTBI, which may re-activate at any time. A significant proportion of the population\(^1\) is undernourished, which leads to weakened immunity and TB reactivation. A considerable population also suffers from conditions weakening immunity, including diabetes, indoor air pollution from cook stoves, or smoking, that increase the likelihood for progression to active TB. Tens of millions with previous, inadequately treated TB may recur or relapse at any time. The dense, growing urban environment facilitates the transmission of the disease cutting across all economic strata. Infectious TB cases spread disease to their family and to the community, perpetuating the age-old cycle of transmission and disease.

Despite these odds, countries have repeatedly demonstrated that TB transmission of infection is reflectively controlled in the modern era, as long as enough TB is diagnosed early, treated appropriately, appropriately interrupting further transmission. The overwhelming challenge facing TB control in India remains delayed diagnosis and inadequate treatment, particularly among patients seeking care from private providers, who, without the support of public health, are ill-equipped to sustain their patients on prolonged, costly treatment. Patients seeking care in the public sector have a better chance of treatment success, but still one-third are lost between care-seeking and successful cure. India also has a large burden of multidrug-resistant (MDR-) TB and extensively drug-resistant (XDR-) TB most of whom are undetected and continue to transmit disease. Even those who are detected endure long, toxic, and costly treatments with poor treatment success rates and a high likelihood of default.

Although India has managed to scale up basic TB services in the public health system, treating more than 19 million TB patients under RNTCP, the rate of TB decline is too slow to meet the 2030 Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) and 2035 End TB targets. Although sufficient insight and expertise exists to inform TB programme decision-making, these resources have often been underutilized in terms of meeting the needs of policy makers for quantitative analysis and improvements in TB control policy and implementation.

Continuation of prior efforts has yielded inadequate declines, and will not accelerate the progress towards ending TB. New, comprehensively-deployed interventions are required to accelerate the rate of decline of incidence of TB many fold, to more than 10-15% annually. The requirements for moving towards TB elimination have been integrated into the four strategic pillars of “Detect – Treat – Prevent – Build” (DTPB).

Explaining the DTPB approach of NSP 2017-2025

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DETECT</th>
<th>HOW DO WE DO IT?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Find all DS-TB and DR-TB cases with an emphasis on reaching TB patients seeking care from private providers and undiagnosed TB in high-risk populations. | • Scale-up free, high sensitivity diagnostic tests and algorithms  
• Scale-up effective private provider engagement approaches  
• Universal testing for drug-resistant TB  
• Systematic screening of high risk populations |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TREAT</th>
<th>HOW DO WE DO IT?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Initiate and sustain all</td>
<td>• Prevent the loss of TB cases in the cascade of care with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) 35% of adults and almost half of children in India are undernourished. NFHS-3
patients on appropriate anti-TB treatment wherever they seek care, with patient friendly systems and social support.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prevent</th>
<th>HOW DO WE DO IT?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Prevent the emergence of TB in susceptible populations | • Scale up air-borne infection control measures at health care facilities  
• Testing and treatment for latent TB infection in contacts of bacteriologically-confirmed cases and in individuals at high risk of getting TB disease  
• Address social determinants of TB through intersectoral approach |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Build</th>
<th>HOW DO WE DO IT?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Build and strengthen enabling policies, empowered institutions, human resources with enhanced capacities, and financial resources to match the plan. | • Translate high level political commitment to action through supportive policy and institutional structures:  
• National TB Elimination Board with 4 divisions instead of the current administrative set up at the national level and matching structures at state level  
• National TB Policy and Act  
• Restructure RNTCP management structure and implementation arrangement: Substantially augmented HR and HR reforms to include unified programme supervisory cadre (merger of STS/STLS/TBHV) and dedicated staff for TB surveillance network in the country  
• Scale up Technical Assistance at national and state levels.  
• Align and harmonize partners’ activities with programme needs to prevent duplication |

Throughout the NSP period, concerted attempts will be made to sharpen the programmes focus on increasing the yield and results from its strategies. This will be defined by the following:

- Nature of partnerships with Private Sector- RNTCP’s role will be enabling service provision, stewardship and monitoring.
- Collaborations and linkages between national programmes, departments and ministries
- Research, innovations and knowledge management - integral and critical for progress
- Strategic resource mobilization – explore mechanisms of raising resources for TB control beyond the Government’s allocation
- Accountability to TB patients – using community feedback mechanisms
- Enhanced voice for a leadership role for India in the global TB arena

**The next set of actions**

The implementation of this NSP will be a combined effort of all the stakeholders to achieve common goals. A restructured Central TB Division (CTD) at the MoHFW will oversee the implementation of the plan by coordinating the work of the National TB Control Board at the national level. State TB Cells will continue to oversee the work at state and district levels. Implementation of the NSP will begin on 1st April 2017.
Significant increase in the budget allocations for fiscal years (FY) 2017-2018 and beyond will be required to implement the NSP. It is also known that the resource requirements for implementing the NSP will be a function of the pace of implementation of the strategy, the demand from states, and the availability of resources in an environment of significant (doubling over the last 2 NSP periods) growth in the overall programme budget. Hence advocacy with National Government and resource generation strategies will be aggressively pursued. It is expected that the cost of implementing the new NSP at Rs 12,327 Crores (USD 1890 Million) will involve a significant increase over the last NSP budget.

For achieving the goals of the NSP 2017 – 2025, the following critical components of the programme will be addressed on priority. The next set of actions by CTD, are as follows.

1. Evolve a scheme to address the patients seeking care in private sector with suitable incentives for the private doctors and patients to report TB cases coupled with another scheme to provide free of cost medicines to TB patients going to a private doctor/institute.
2. Develop a robust, modern MIS system to monitor the newly diagnosed as well as existing cases of TB on delivery of the drug kit to the patient, compliance to treatment regimen etc. The MIS system will have suitable linkages with the private pharmacy on sale of anti-TB drugs thereby integrating those patients into the MIS.
3. Conduct the national TB prevalence survey
4. Increase the availability of rapid molecular tests so that these diagnostic facilities are also made available for patients referred by any private doctor or institute.
5. Improve the adherence the treatment regimen: MoHFW will start customized SMS services to individual patients on regular basis reminding them about the time to consume the drugs.
6. Establish mechanisms for facilitating nutritional support to the TB patients, including financial support through DBT mode.
7. Develop a scheme to provide suitable incentives to the states doing well in RNTCP. The incentives will also be linked with performance in “Swachh Bharat Mission”.
8. Create a ‘TB Corpus Fund’: To improve financial sustainability in the TB sector the programme will mobilise additional resources to accelerate TB control efforts, for which the ‘Bharat Kshay Nyantran Pratishtan’ (India TB Control Foundation) is proposed. Activities like nutrition support for TB patients, active case finding in prisons, slums, tribal area, sputum collection and transport in difficult areas will be carried out.

All these priority activities will be supported by a high visibility advocacy and communication campaign, “TB Mukt Bharat” (the national “sweep out TB”) which will be massive, repetitive, intensive and persuasive, to improve case-finding and community commitment at panchayat, district and state level.

**Tracking the progress**

A National level annual review of the programme will be undertaken by the TB elimination board. Apart from the SDG related indicators the review will also track programme performance and provide directives to enhance the ease of programme implementation at all levels.

Annual district TB control mission plans and report cards will incorporate the NSP priorities and evaluate its implementation in the districts and sub district level. Community accountability scorecards will be introduced in the current plan period which will ensure community ownership and early identification of system challenges.

A detailed plan to monitor and evaluate progress towards NSP goals has been drawn up with input from all the stakeholders. Implementation and measurement will be ‘bottom-up’. The CTD Monitoring and Evaluation unit will produce reports based on regular input from the states and all sectors represented in TB control efforts. Regular central and state programme evaluation will
continue as is being done now with necessary changes in the TOR based on new interventions and strategies. As has been done over the past two decades, there will be an annual report highlighting the programme performance, a comprehensive evaluation report at the midpoint of the NSP and a final evaluation report at the end of the NSP. All reports will be posted on the national programmes website: www.tbcindia.gov.in

The NSP period 2017 – 2025 is a time of immense potential with the hopes of seeing new drugs, regimens and diagnostics. Wider application of ICT tools and health financing methodologies carry with it a promise for a stronger and rapid response to the TB epidemic. The national programme is aware of these possibilities and will suitably modify the NSP to incorporate these new tools.

To summarize, the ultimate impact of this NSP will be transformational improvements in the ‘End TB’ efforts of India thereby contributing to the health and wellbeing of its population. The programme expects quality improvements as well as efficiency benefits contributing to significant cost savings. By taking a Detect – Treat – Prevent – Build approach the national programme can achieve significant positive change and make a real difference in the lives of the many people it serves. The impact of this NSP will be seen with commensurate investments, estimated to be around ₹12,327 crores in the national TB programme, especially in view of the required massive increase in notification from the private sector and building patient support mechanisms for all TB patients.
The journey so far

The National Tuberculosis Programme of India (NTP) was initiated in 1962 and was originally designed for domiciliary treatment, using self-administered standard drug regimens. A combined review of the programme in 1992 concluded that the NTP could not achieve its objectives of TB control and hence, on the recommendations of an expert committee, a revised strategy to control TB was pilot-tested in 1993. A full-fledged programme was started in 1997 and rapidly expanded with excellent results. This Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme (RNTCP) that uses the DOTS (Directly Observed Treatment, Short-course chemotherapy) strategy achieved country coverage on World TB Day, 24th March, 2006. The programme has achieved several milestones related to diagnosis and treatment services of TB since 2006. Since inception in 1997 and up to December 2015, more than 19 million patients were initiated on treatment and more than 3.5 million additional lives have been saved.

National AIDS Control Programme and RNTCP have developed a “National framework of joint TB/HIV Collaborative Activities”. Nationwide coverage of services for programmatic management of drug resistant TB, which began in 2007, has been achieved in March 2013. The Government is also proactively engaging with private practitioners, a number of private organizations, NGOs and professional bodies like Indian Medical Association, in order to enhance notification of TB cases. Central TB Division, in collaboration with National Informatics Centre, has developed a case-based web-based platform- ‘Nikshay’ in 2012, which has now been scaled up nationally.

The Standards for TB Care in India (STCI) have been published jointly by RNTCP and World Health Organization in 2014, which lays down uniform standards for TB care for all stakeholders in the country.

NSP 2012-17 Key Achievements

India’s achievements in TB control over the past decade are remarkable. More than 90 million people have been tested, more than 19 million TB patients detected and treated, and millions of lives saved by the RNTCP’s efforts. India’s ambitious National Strategic Plan (NSP) to achieve universal access to quality TB diagnosis and treatment has guided activities and created accountability against results. India achieved complete geographical coverage for diagnostic and treatment services for multi-drug resistant TB (MDR-TB) in 2013, with a remarkable 93,000 persons with MDR-TB diagnosed and put on treatment till 2015. The nation’s first national anti-TB drug resistance survey is being conducted by NTI, Bangalore. The RNTCP and the National AIDS Control Organization (NACO) have made HIV-TB collaboration efficient and effective; most TB patients registered by RNTCP receive HIV screening, and now 90% of HIV-infected TB patients receive anti-retroviral treatment (ART).

In a landmark move, the Government of India, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare has notified for prohibiting the import of sero-diagnostic test kits for TB and also the manufacture, sale, distribution and use of such kits for TB, on 7th June 2012. Another government order issued by the Government of India in May 2012 mandates all healthcare providers to notify every TB case diagnosed and/or treated, to local authorities. The banning of serological tests for diagnosis of active TB, saved...
countless persons from inaccurate test results and unnecessary expense. Since TB became a notifiable disease in 2012, private providers nationwide have notified more than 0.7 million TB patients. This also benefited from the Government’s adoption of a unifying ‘Standards for TB Care in India’, applicable for the public and private sector alike.

The year 2014 saw large strides being made with many new initiatives and policy changes in RNTCP. Some examples include the launch of the first nationwide anti-TB drug resistance survey of India, piloting of the daily fixed dose combination drug regimen across 100 districts in the country, formulation of draft guidelines on DST guided treatment for drug resistant TB patients, implementation of molecular techniques like CBNAAT being deployed at ART sites in 5 high TB/HIV burden states to detect MTB in presumptive TB cases among people living with HIV, screening of all TB patients for diabetes under programme settings, and the release of Standards for TB Care in India, a comprehensive handbook facilitating patient centric standards for TB care for all stakeholders.

The National programme also rolled out an innovative and visionary electronic recording and reporting system (Nikshay) across the country in 2012, with 98% of reporting units sending in case-based reporting of TB patients, including notifications from private providers. Innovative approaches, including interface agencies and e-voucher systems for free drugs, have been successfully deployed as pilots to engage more private providers and improve quality of care. Modern media are being creatively used for TB control with India’s leading actor, Amitabh Bachchan’s campaign, “TB Harega, Desh Jeetega”, with commendable investments by the Ministry and corporations to broadcast these messages.

Throughout this time, RNTCP has demonstrated unprecedented financial absorption capacity. While allocations have been lower than requested, it has been spent fully. During the last NSP a sum of Rs. 3003.76 crores were received out of which Rs 2754.33 crore was spent (information as of 14th Feb 2017). The health and economic benefits of the RNTCP have been enormous, with an estimated USD$350 billion gain to the Indian economy in the 10 years from 2006 to 2015, relative to the absence of RNTCP services.

The TB Burden in India

Though the available data suggest that the TB epidemic may be on the decline, India continues to be the highest TB burden country in the world in terms of the absolute numbers of incidence cases each year. Mortality due to TB is the third leading cause of years of life lost (YLLs) lost, in the country. TB alone contributes to 3.3% of Disability adjusted life years (DALYs) attributable to all-cause premature mortality and morbidity in the country. The estimated incidence (new TB cases per year) is 2.8 million cases in 2015 (217(CI: 112 to 355) per 100000 population) with a confidence interval of 1.47 to 4.65 million. The estimated mortality due to TB is 480,000 (CI: 380000-590,000) and varies across different parts in the country depending upon background HIV prevalence in the general population. Approximately 5% of the incident TB cases have co-morbidity with HIV, though this proportion varies depending on the HIV prevalence of the population.

However India has a wide spectrum of TB epidemiology. Data from the 7 subnational prevalence surveys, sub national and district level prevalence of infection surveys and analysis of programme notification data on TB, MDR TB and TB HIV reveals that the country has varied epidemiology from very high TB prevalence to very low TB prevalence, high and low TB/HIV coinfection and DR-TB depending on state/regions. There is general epidemiological difference between urban and rural areas, urban areas are typically characterized by lower prevalence with higher Annual Risk of TB infection (ARTI), while rural areas characterized by higher prevalence and lower ARTI. The diversity
of TB epidemiology in the country necessitates different approaches to be adopted for addressing the problem.

But challenges remain

The JMM 2015 observed that the implementation of the NSP for 2012-2017 did not achieve the projected increase in case detection by the RNTCP. In addition, the ambitious expansion of resources planned under the NSP, 2012-2017 should have tripled the expenditure of the prior plan, but has not been matched by allocations. While RNTCP expenditure has increased 27% since 2012, there is a growing gap between the allocation of funds and the minimum investment required to reach the goals of the NSPs.

The private sector is massive, heterogeneous, and growing with more than half the TB patients in the country being cared for in this sector. In spite of the mandatory notification policy, many patients are still not notified to the RNTCP. Two decades of attempts to improve collaboration between the public and private sectors, have not yet worked except through a few innovative pilots. The existing TB surveillance system lacks the capacity to count the large pool of privately diagnosed and treated TB cases, and what is not measured is unlikely to be improved.

Within the public sector, there is heavy dependence on an insensitive diagnostic test, sputum microscopy, which, in addition, cannot diagnose drug resistance. The NSP, in line with the STCI, promotes drug susceptibility testing for all presumed cases of MDR TB and other groups.

While the expansion of treatment of MDR TB cases is a major achievement, the cost of providing services is approaching 40% of total RNTCP expenditure. This threatens the future of TB control in India and underscores the necessity to prevent drug resistance. Universal drug susceptibility testing and switching to a daily fixed dose combination regimen with adherence support will begin to address this problem.

The enormous diversity between States Districts, in terms of population, terrain, level of development, health systems, and epidemiologic variety pose problems for a uniform centralized approach to TB control. TB patients, civil society leaders, and community-based organizations need to be meaningfully and intensively engaged in the TB response at all levels. The draft national health policy 2015 recognizes the diversity in India and very well articulates the need for special efforts to reach and address TB in vulnerable and disadvantaged groups. These key affected population groups are vulnerable, face barriers in accessing care and deserve more attention for reasons of equity, social justice and human rights. There has been limited progress in the form of special action plans for tribal populations and several local projects targeting key population groups, but implementation to date has not matched the scale of the need.

In the rural areas, the RNTCP has been able to develop a structure for programme implementation because of the established rural health infrastructure under the general health system. In the urban areas, however, there is no established health structure owing to the slow progress of the National Health Mission in the urban areas. The lack of effective

TB PROBLEM IN INDIA

India has the highest burden of Tuberculosis and multi-drug-resistant TB (MDR-TB) in the world, disproportionately high even for India’s population.

Recent evidences indicate that India’s TB burden may be reducing, but only very slowly.

There is wide geographical variation in the epidemic and its trends. Severe local epidemics are hidden behind inadequate data and surveillance systems, which miss most privately-treated patients.

Delay in diagnosis, inadequate treatment, high rates of recurrent TB, drug resistance, diabetes, HIV, under nutrition, urbanization etc. are important drivers for the persisting TB epidemic.
partnerships with the private sector too adversely impacts the Tb care and management in the urban areas. Tracking patients put on treatment, especially the migrant urban slum dwellers, has also remained a challenge.

The integration between the health systems and the programme has been achieved in the provision of services. However it is limited in other operational areas such as administration, financial management and monitoring and supervision. This has affected the quality of implementation because of the multiple administrative, financial and operational functions to be carried out by the field level staff. The numerous vacancies within the health system contribute to the weak implementation capacity of the programme.

**Analysis of the environment in which the TB programme operates**

An analysis of the economic, political and social context in which the TB programme operates has given insight and knowledge into the need to respond rapidly and effectively to the many challenges required to address the unrelenting TB epidemic. The continued resource crunch, increased demands of a weak public health system and an indifferent private sector add to the challenges faced. However, research has demonstrated that the programme has huge strengths to draw on as it takes the opportunities presented by new diagnostics and drugs, emphasis on digital technologies and radical strategies for making the required epidemiological impact.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strengths</th>
<th>Weakness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internal factors</strong></td>
<td>1. Many communities have been poorly served by one-size policy prescription as TB epidemiology in India is diverse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. TB programme structure unable to cope with the growing demands for ending TB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Limited human resource at the central TB division which severely limits programme management at the National level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Private sector involvement in public health actions related to TB control is not commensurate to its size and dominance in TB care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. High level political and administrative commitment providing fresh impetus to TB elimination efforts in the country.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Deliberate efforts to move away from the routine and set aspirational goals, targets with strategies and actions to match.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Availability of new drugs, regimens, diagnostics, approaches and strategies to end TB.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Opportunities</strong></td>
<td><strong>Threats</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Aggressive research agenda driven by the research consortium including clinical trials for new drugs, vaccines and genomic studies provides unheralded potential for TB control.</td>
<td>1. Amplification of drug resistance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. In-country innovations and pilots with potential for replication and scale up.</td>
<td>2. Insufficient budgetary outlay for health in the national budgets compromising the allocation to TB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. SDGs and End TB strategy provide ambitious targets to aim</td>
<td>3. Variable implementation capacity, capability and ownership of the states.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Loss of independent, third party, technical assistance from development partners</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Crafting strategies for the current NSP involved the analysis above, inputs from the working groups set up for specific thematic areas (Annex M) and also included TB impact modelling.

**TB impact modelling**

Early modelling exercises show that increased coverage of care both in public and private sector will result in a decline by roughly half the TB incidence in the country over a decade. Activities to address determinants of TB such as urbanization, housing, malnutrition, and interventions such as active case finding in high risk population, are expected to further reduce the incidence. Ongoing analysis is incorporating these interventions to understand the additional reduction in incidence that may be possible and commensurate activities to achieve the ambitious goals of this NSP.
The Ministry of health and family welfare in consultation with over 150 national and international experts working in the field of public health, programme managers, donor agencies, technical partners, civil societies, affected community representatives and other stakeholders in TB control both from public as well as private sector finalized the new National Strategic Plan for TB 2017-2025 (NSP).

This new NSP was prepared in two phases. The first phase of preparation was completed at a National consultative meeting for the development of NSP in October 2016. The meeting was, attended by all the major stakeholders in the country, culminated in the formulation of many smaller workgroups, a process of extensive secondary consultations and confirmed the proposed strategic directions. The second phase coalesced and finalized necessary technical work to address the main comments from the working group discussions and comments received from partners and experts. The new strategy benefits from the comments and suggestions given to the team during these enriching consultations. This NSP is intended to contribute to the decisions of the policy makers at the national and state levels, development partners, and other stakeholders supporting the RNTCP efforts to end TB in India.

This NSP outlines a new strategic vision for TB control that places emphasis on bold and innovative strategies supported by an enabling structural and policy environment to roll out the interventions nationally. These have been informed by the periodic programme reviews and programmatic gap analysis. Although this NSP does not include every intervention that must happen in India to end TB, its preparation has been informed by abundant in-depth policy work, conducted at the central level, setting forth analysis on direct benefit transfers to patients, on nutrition support, on extensive use of ICT in the programme, and a renewed commitment to universalize diagnosis and treatment for TB, particularly in the private sector. It provides the vision of the national programme on the need to strengthen health systems and also address key challenges in the near future that include managing the disease in diabetics, cancer patients, elderly and children. Through the implementation of this new NSP, RNTCP plans to further strengthen its analytical and operational work in these important areas.

The new NSP 2017 - 2025 identifies a path of action and internal functional modifications for its implementation to bring about essential improvements in the programme performance. It identifies necessary changes that will allow better support for the programme as well as stakeholder’s efforts to achieve results.
CHAPTER 3
PROGRAMME INDICATORS

The Results Framework presented below summarizes the key strategies of the NSP. Measuring, monitoring, and evaluating ending TB outcomes is central to the success of the national programme. A major activity for the programme will be to set up a surveillance system and integrate it into the existing Nikshay platform. Developing detailed indicators for surveillance endorsed by stakeholders will be an early activity of strategy implementation in this field. Key indicators for each strategy, source of information and milestones are as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total TB patients notified</td>
<td>1607983</td>
<td>1745000</td>
<td>2350000</td>
<td>3000000</td>
<td>3350000</td>
<td>3600000</td>
<td>3600000</td>
<td>3100000</td>
<td>2700000</td>
<td>2300000</td>
<td>2000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>190000 - 270000</td>
<td>240000 - 320000</td>
<td>260000 - 365000</td>
<td>280000 - 390000</td>
<td>270000 - 365000</td>
<td>245000 - 365000</td>
<td>250000 - 365000</td>
<td>300000 - 320000</td>
<td>120000 - 260000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of TB patients registered under RNTCP</td>
<td>1423181</td>
<td>1420000</td>
<td>1450000</td>
<td>1500000</td>
<td>1550000</td>
<td>1600000</td>
<td>1600000</td>
<td>1550000</td>
<td>1450000</td>
<td>1250000</td>
<td>1000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>140000 - 150000</td>
<td>140000 - 160000</td>
<td>140000 - 165000</td>
<td>140000 - 170000</td>
<td>135000 - 170000</td>
<td>125000 - 165000</td>
<td>125000 - 165000</td>
<td>100000 - 150000</td>
<td>100000 - 130000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of TB patients notified by private sector</td>
<td>1848018</td>
<td>3250000</td>
<td>900000</td>
<td>1500000</td>
<td>1800000</td>
<td>2000000</td>
<td>2000000</td>
<td>1750000</td>
<td>1500000</td>
<td>1000000</td>
<td>8000000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>500000 - 1200000</td>
<td>100000 - 1600000</td>
<td>1200000 - 2000000</td>
<td>1400000 - 2200000</td>
<td>1400000 - 2200000</td>
<td>1200000 - 2000000</td>
<td>1200000 - 1800000</td>
<td>1000000 - 1600000</td>
<td>1300000 - 1300000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of presumptive TB pts to be offered</td>
<td>913230</td>
<td>9200000</td>
<td>8235000</td>
<td>8100000</td>
<td>8085000</td>
<td>6300000</td>
<td>6550000</td>
<td>5800000</td>
<td>5175000</td>
<td>4650000</td>
<td>4125000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacteriological test (Sputum microscopy)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of presumptive and diagnosed TB pts to be offered rapid molecular test</td>
<td>400000</td>
<td>1566000</td>
<td>2063000</td>
<td>3670000</td>
<td>5670000</td>
<td>8670000</td>
<td>1670000</td>
<td>1342000</td>
<td>1477000</td>
<td>1587000</td>
<td>1662000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Proportion of identified targeted key affected population screened annually

Proportion of TB patients notified by the private sector

Proportion of microbiologically confirmed TB patients out of those notified by private sector

Proportion of notified TB cases with known HIV status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>19%</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>54%</td>
<td>56%</td>
<td>56%</td>
<td>56%</td>
<td>56%</td>
<td>52%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>42%</td>
<td>45%</td>
<td>45%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>67%</td>
<td>71%</td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>86%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>94%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>95%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Including private sector)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of notified TB patients offered DST</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>98%</td>
<td>99%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of presumptive MDR/RR TB patients to be examined</td>
<td>34139</td>
<td>54493</td>
<td>60000</td>
<td>70000</td>
<td>90000</td>
<td>110000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>120000</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>140000</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of MDR/RR TB patients notified</td>
<td>29057</td>
<td>36000</td>
<td>53460</td>
<td>66000</td>
<td>78975</td>
<td>92000</td>
<td>92000</td>
<td>78250</td>
<td>69000</td>
<td>61500</td>
<td>55000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of MDR/RR TB patients initiated on treatment</td>
<td>27104</td>
<td>33000</td>
<td>48114</td>
<td>59400</td>
<td>71078</td>
<td>82800</td>
<td>82800</td>
<td>70425</td>
<td>62100</td>
<td>55350</td>
<td>49500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of H mono-poly resistant TB patients notified</td>
<td>11802</td>
<td>13144</td>
<td>16038</td>
<td>21120</td>
<td>101088</td>
<td>184000</td>
<td>184000</td>
<td>156500</td>
<td>138000</td>
<td>123000</td>
<td>110000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of H mono-poly resistant TB patients initiated on treatment</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>14434</td>
<td>19908</td>
<td>90979</td>
<td>165600</td>
<td>165600</td>
<td>140850</td>
<td>124200</td>
<td>110700</td>
<td>99000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of Pre XDR TB patients notified</td>
<td>1837</td>
<td>1785</td>
<td>13365</td>
<td>22500</td>
<td>25125</td>
<td>27000</td>
<td>27000</td>
<td>23250</td>
<td>20250</td>
<td>17250</td>
<td>15000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of Pre XDR TB patients initiated on treatment</td>
<td>1670</td>
<td>1550</td>
<td>12029</td>
<td>20250</td>
<td>22613</td>
<td>24300</td>
<td>24300</td>
<td>20925</td>
<td>18225</td>
<td>15525</td>
<td>13500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of NTM patients notified</td>
<td>580</td>
<td>720</td>
<td>1974</td>
<td>2520</td>
<td>2814</td>
<td>3024</td>
<td>3024</td>
<td>2604</td>
<td>2268</td>
<td>1932</td>
<td>1680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of NTM Patient initiated on treatment</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>2419</td>
<td>2419</td>
<td>2344</td>
<td>2041</td>
<td>1739</td>
<td>1512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of XDR TB patients notified</td>
<td>2340</td>
<td>1340</td>
<td>2406</td>
<td>2970</td>
<td>3554</td>
<td>4140</td>
<td>4140</td>
<td>3521</td>
<td>3105</td>
<td>2768</td>
<td>2475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of XDR TB patients initiated on treatment</td>
<td>2127</td>
<td>1197</td>
<td>2165</td>
<td>2673</td>
<td>3198</td>
<td>3726</td>
<td>3726</td>
<td>3169</td>
<td>2795</td>
<td>2491</td>
<td>2228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of notified patients initiated on treatment (public &amp; private sector)</td>
<td>88%</td>
<td>89%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>99%</td>
<td>99%</td>
<td>99%</td>
<td>99%</td>
<td>99%</td>
<td>99%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of patients from private sector who are provisioned or reimbursed by the program for anti TB drugs</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment success rate of TB Pvts in the pvt sector</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment success rate for DS TB</td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>78%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>92%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment success rate for RR TB</td>
<td>46%</td>
<td>46%</td>
<td>48%</td>
<td>48%</td>
<td>56%</td>
<td>65%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>72%</td>
<td>73%</td>
<td>74%</td>
<td>75%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of notified TB patients using ICT supported adherence systems</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of notified TB patients receiving financial support through DBT</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of notified TB – HIV cases</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Initiated on CPT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of notified TB – HIV cases initiated on ART</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prevent</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of tertiary and secondary facilities with budgeted action plan for AIC in TB facilities</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of identified/eligible individuals for preventive therapy / LTBI s - initiated on treatment</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>95%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of rapid molecular laboratories established</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>628</td>
<td>835</td>
<td>1335</td>
<td>1835</td>
<td>2335</td>
<td>3335</td>
<td>4335</td>
<td>5335</td>
<td>6335</td>
<td>7335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of first-line DST (Phenotypic) laboratories established</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of first-line DST (Genotypic) laboratories established</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of second-line DST (Genotypic) laboratories established</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of second-line DST (Phenotypic) laboratories established</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of districts covered for call center support for treatment adherence (including 99 DOTS districts)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of sanctioned positions (newly created positions in this NSP) filled</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of TB surveillance unit (CTD &amp; NTI) established at the national level</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of TB surveillance units established at the state level</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of TB surveillance units established at the district level</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of treatment supporters paid</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incentives/honourarium using DBT/PFMS</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of private providers paid incentives/honorarium using DBT/PFMS</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of Contractual staff salaries paid through DBT</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of public pvt interface units established at the state level</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of public pvt interface units established at the district level</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of Electronic drugs and supply chain management systems deployed in the districts</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of districts with capability for identification local and focal epidemic using GIS based ICT tools</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proportion of notified TB pts receiving social support from CBOs, NGOs, FBOs</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What does it mean in the context of this NSP for TB elimination in India?

Early identification of presumptive TB cases, at the first point of care be it private or public sectors, and prompt diagnosis using high sensitivity diagnostic tests to provide universal access to quality TB diagnosis including drug resistant TB in the country.

What does it entail?

1. To use high efficiency diagnostic tools for early and accurate diagnosis across the country
2. Purchasing services and ensuring notification through laboratories from the private sector and link to laboratory surveillance
3. Active TB case finding approach for targeted high risk groups continued for reaching the unreached
4. Provide for good quality free diagnosis and treatment to patients seeking care in the private sector by engaging all private sector health care provider
CHAPTER 4
LABORATORY SYSTEMS AND DIAGNOSIS

Introduction

It is of paramount importance to achieve universal access to early accurate diagnosis of TB, enhancing case finding efficiency and identification of presumptive TB cases at the first point of care in order to link them to the best available diagnostic tests. Early case detection is vital to interrupt the transmission of TB disease.

Since 2007-08, annually, RNTCP screens approximately 20 million symptomatic persons by microscopy for TB and initiates about 1.5 million persons on TB treatment. CBNAAT and Line Probe Assay introduced in 2009 and scaled up from 2012 onwards, have ensured that rapid molecular diagnostics are available throughout the country. In 2016, 520,000 patients have been tested using these methods and 35,000 Rifampicin resistant/MDR-TB patients have been diagnosed. Second line DST using Liquid culture systems are in place and are being scaled up to cover the entire country by December 2017.

RNTCP has a three tier laboratory network system for the diagnosis of TB. The NRL, IRL, and DMCs, and all the laboratories under RNTCP follow the quality assurance protocol for all technologies as per the WHO guidelines. RNTCP uses sputum smear microscopy for primary diagnosis of drug-sensitive TB and a rapid molecular test for the diagnosis of drug-resistant TB. With the expansion of the scope of diagnostic tests at the DMC, and not just limited to sputum microscopy the term DMC is replaced with Tuberculosis diagnostic centers (TDCs).

The integrated diagnostic algorithm as described in the TOG prioritizes the use of high sensitivity tools like chest radiograph as a screening method to improve the sensitivity of detecting pulmonary TB followed by a high sensitivity diagnostic test like CBNAAT as tool for universal DST.

Routine Surveillance for TB and DR TB is mostly derived from prevalence surveys for disease burden, ARTI surveys for new infection and state and district level drug resistance surveys. The recently concluded first National Drug Resistance Survey has provided new insights on various drug resistance patterns and is the first step to build capacity for setting up continuous surveillance system in the country.

TB Research has been conducted in India through various specialized institutions like ICMR, DBT etc. RNTCP has made special efforts to promote research especially operational research in medical colleges and other national institutes. This is now being further refined through a national mechanism of setting a TB Research Consortium to promote and foster research. However RNTCP will continue to support ORs and also liaise with the consortium for field evaluations and implementation research for new improved tools in the area of diagnostics.

Hitherto the programme did not have an articulated policy for LTBI management except for children less than 6 years of age who are contacts of smear positive pulmonary TB or PLHIV. It is envisaged that with the country adopting the end TB strategy, LTBI diagnosis and treatment will be initially used as a strategy only in low prevalence settings as notified by the programme.

Achievements
The RNTCP has scaled up the use of rapid molecular diagnostic tools such as LPA and CBNAAT and has over 735 CBNAAT facilities for decentralized DR TB testing. This expansion resulted in a significant increase in the number of MDR TB patients diagnosed in the year 2015-16. In addition, baseline second line DST using the MGIT system was scaled up with 25 laboratories throughout the country providing complete geographical coverage. RNTCP has made available more than 1800 LED based fluorescent microscopes (LED FM) for the high workload DMCs to improve efficiency of smear microscopy services. RNTCP has established two additional NRLs to improve supervision and monitoring of state level laboratories, and adapted newer technologies with an increase in the number of state level laboratories to ensure an even distribution of the increasing work load. RNCTP has engaged the private sector laboratories under the revised NGO-PP schemes for service delivery. As stated in the NSP 2012 to 2017, RNCTP has significant coverage with newer diagnostics at DMCs as depicted below and this includes more than 1800 LED FM DMC in the high workload DMCs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>2012</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DMC_LED</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>&gt;1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRL/ Solid</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLD-LC</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLD-LC</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPA</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CB NAAT</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private Sector</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Another key achievement is building capacity for decentralized sputum collection and transport for laboratory testing. This has resulted in rapid turnaround times of results for patients to be initiated on MDR TB regimens. The programme has a very well established quality assurance (QA) mechanism which follows the WHO hierarchal system starting from the highest level National Reference laboratories to State Intermediate Reference laboratories (both IRL & CDST), to CBNAAT laboratories at the district/sub-district level and lastly reaching the designated microscopy centres at the most peripheral level. The QA has all elements of internal quality control, on-site evaluation and external quality control. The EQA for DST is in through structured panel testing and retesting exercises. The proficiency testing schedule occurs annually with a biennial certification process for all technologies (both DST & molecular). RNCTP has a WHO supranational reference laboratory (SRL) for the South East Asia region located at Chennai (NIRT, ICMR) which also serves as a NRL. Quality assurance panels for both first and second line drugs are provided by the WHO coordinating lab (Antwerp) of SRL network to the SRL in Chennai and 2 other NRLs (NTI Bangalore & NITRD Delhi).

**Challenges**

RNCTP has multiple challenges in provisioning laboratory services. These include the following.

- **Collection of appropriate specimens from children and EPTB patients.** The capacity for specimen collection (children & EPTB) at the district level is deficient. Transportation of specimens from hard to reach areas (hilly, tribal, deserts, etc.) continues to be challenging despite local efforts to improve the sputum collection and transport system.

- **Establishment of TB containment laboratories at state level.**

- **Procurement of equipment from original manufacturers from outside the country who have restricted or no in-country post sales services, threatens lab operations.** With only a limited number of firms in select locations in country with capacity to provide annual maintenance contract (AMC) services, the cost of AMC is high. AMC for equipment is an issue due to limited technical knowledge and availability of funds.

- **Supervision of laboratories is sub-optimal due to limited resources for OSE and excessive workload due to expanding PMDT services.** The paper based system of monitoring (recording
and reporting) is tedious leading to delayed reporting, limited analysis and troubleshooting of errors in lab data. There is limited capacity of the programme to take timely corrective actions.

- RNTCP laboratories do not conform to the ISO 15189 standards despite having a robust QA system of certification of processes.
- Retention of trained laboratory staff and poor compensation packages are a barrier for sustainability and ensuring consistent performance.

**Expanding and strengthening the capacity of laboratories**

The goal of diagnosis and lab services is to further expand and strengthen the “diagnostic network” including the capacity of laboratories in conducting mycobacterium TB culture and drug sensitivity tests (C&DST) towards achieving universal access to quality TB diagnosis including drug resistant TB in the country.

**Strategies**

1. Use high efficiency diagnostic tools for early and accurate diagnosis linked treatment across the country
2. Strengthen surveillance systems including introduction and scale up of next generation sequencing (NGS) platforms
3. Purchasing services and ensuring notification through laboratories from the private sector and link to laboratory surveillance
4. Promote and foster research in conjunction with the TB Research Consortium for new diagnostic tools
5. Build capacity for diagnosis of LTBI

**Activities**

1. Provision of Digital X-Ray preferably enabled with Computer Aided Diagnosis (CAD) and tele-radiology services across the health sector: Most of the district hospitals have an X-Ray facility and these will be utilized for screening. For those districts which might not have an X-Ray machine the programme will facilitate access to radiology services. For patients seeking care in the private sector the services will be made available free either by free tests in the government facilities or through mechanisms for reimbursement of costs.
2. Universal DST to at least Rifampicin for all diagnosed TB patients through offer of rapid molecular tests will be rolled out in a phased manner starting 2017. DBT will be utilized for purchase of services from private/non-health sectors. *The mechanism for transfer of benefits directly into the beneficiary’s bank account is described in details in the chapter on patient support systems.*
3. Diagnostics for NTM detection and DST will be introduced and scaled up. The guidelines to diagnose and manage NTMs have been added to the updated PMDT guidelines and will be rolled out in a phased manner throughout the country starting 2017. This will also include the building of capacity of the laboratories to hasten the roll out.
4. A sentinel surveillance system as per the lab scale up plan will be established in the country with National TB Institute, Bengaluru as the nodal centre. Initially it will involve setting up sentinel centres at 10 sites with additional human resource and sequencing equipments and reagents. The sentinel surveillance, initially will be through these select sites which will progressively be transitioned to routine surveillance in private laboratories and linked to RNTCP surveillance.
5. Scale up effective mechanisms of affordable diagnostics for TB in private sector will be done including provision of services by the programme, giving diagnostics to the private sector or reimbursement of the cost.
6. In order to address the higher requirement of TB culture tests for follow ups and outcomes, programme will use its own laboratory capacity to its optimum and will opt for using private sector with reimbursement of costs.

7. Additional required human resources deployment for laboratories including biomedical engineer/biotechnologist.

8. Establishment of 2 Additional NRLs (West and North-East).

9. Health Insurance for healthcare workers including laboratory personnel: Efforts will be made to link these personnel with the existing government insurance schemes. A separate chapter on surveillance, monitoring and evaluation explains the details.

10. The programme will empanel accredited laboratories for diagnostics. NABL accreditation for public sector laboratories will be undertaken per the lab scale up plan. Memorandum of understanding (MoU) with NABL for providing proficiency panels to private and corporate sector laboratories for quality assured diagnostics and DST will expand the capacity and accessibility which will be further augmented by training NRL representatives to be NABL assessors for TB laboratories.

11. Implementation of a laboratory information management system and linking it to e-Nikshay will also be hastened during this plan period.

12. Scale up of rapid molecular tests for TB diagnosis. Facilitate research in the development of POC tests. Details are described in the chapter on research.
CHAPTER 5
CASE FINDING

Introduction

Early identification of people with a high probability of having active TB (presumptive TB) is the most important activity of the case finding strategy. Screening and accurately diagnosing patients with appropriate tests and strategies will largely determine the response to appropriate treatment. Presumptive TB patients will be promptly identified and are to be referred to diagnostic facility for appropriate investigation. Patients attending health institutions both in the government and private need to be systematically screened for symptoms of TB by the health care provider. Passive case finding alone leads to missed cases or delayed diagnosis. Enhanced outreach activities to detect more TB cases are critical to universal access. Screening for TB has also to be undertaken at every point of contact with health care among key population including clinically and socially vulnerable group of people.

RNTCP achieved complete geographic coverage in March 2006 and since then case notification rates increased till they plateaued and remained stationary. The case notification rates have started decreasing in many parts of the country despite increasing efforts of symptomatic examination in the public sector. Efforts for ensuring TB notification from the private sector have contributed to an increase in overall notification; but it still is only incremental. Prevalence surveys also suggest that not all chest symptoms seek care and many ignore the symptoms. This necessitates that the programme and health services need to make special efforts for reaching the unreached. An active case finding (ACF) campaign is an effective way to achieve this.

ACF is a provider initiated activity with the primary objective of detecting TB cases early by finding symptomatic people in targeted groups and initiating treatment promptly. It can target people who have sought health care with or without symptoms or signs of TB as well as people who do not seek care. Increased efficiency can be achieved by focusing on clinically, socially and occupationally vulnerable populations. ‘Screening’ is a dynamic process and decisions on when and how to screen for TB, which vulnerable groups to prioritize and which screening tool to use depend on the vulnerable group, the capacity of the health system, and the availability of resources and should be regularly reassessed by the programme.

It is highly imperative to shift from passive to active case finding along with passive case finding in select populations. While, more vulnerable target groups have been well defined by other national programmes, it is being done for TB and reaching such vulnerable population in a campaign mode is proposed hereby. This will create mass awareness about the signs and symptoms in general population. Also, while programme will be able to increase symptomatic examination by 50-60%; it will also result in substantial additional case finding, those that would have remained undiagnosed and unreached by the programme.

Achievements:

To improve the integration with general health system 5082 TUs were aligned and reporting as on March 2016. Sputum collection and transport system was developed but only for presumptive MDR TB. With CBNAAT available in almost all district level facilities, the collection and transport of specimen from the PHI/DMC will be relooked into. During the last NSP period limited success was achieved with Intensive case finding limited to a few sites.
Challenges:

- Lack of awareness in the community on TB diagnostic facilities in the programme (patient pathway - largely multiple consultations leading to delays)
- Case finding is largely passive
- New diagnostic algorithm will require additional resources for CXR, and molecular tests.
- Ensuring active case finding in at risk groups and repeating the activity periodically.
- Engaging with private sector and opening diagnostic facilities in the private sector.

Activities:

1. Implementation of the revised diagnostic algorithm characterized by use of expanded definitions of TB symptomatics, using CXR as a screening test and use of rapid molecular test upfront.
2. For early diagnosis of drug resistance, DST will be offered upfront to all diagnosed TB patients as described in the algorithm above. Additional algorithms are described in the revised TOG.
3. Large scale engagement of the private sector for early and quality diagnosed as highlighted in the next chapter on private sector.
4. A high visibility campaign – ‘TB mukt bharat’ campaign for awareness generation to ensure early case finding described in the chapter in ACSM.
5. For better diagnosis of EPTB, the use of EPTB guidelines will be promoted and necessary tools will be provided.
6. Sputum collection and transport schemes will be promoted.
7. Active case finding activity and screening:

**Active case finding (ACF) activity in vulnerable groups is a focus over the next 5 years and considerable efforts are made to reach these populations. The prioritization of vulnerable groups for screening and ACF is as follows:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Priority</th>
<th>Urban area</th>
<th>Rural area</th>
<th>Tribal area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Slum</td>
<td>Difficult to reach villages</td>
<td>Difficult to reach villages and hamlets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Prisons inmates</td>
<td>Mine workers</td>
<td>Villages with known higher case load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Old Age homes</td>
<td>Stone crusher workers</td>
<td>Tribal school hostels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Construction site workers</td>
<td>Populations groups with high malnutrition</td>
<td>Areas with high malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Refugee camps</td>
<td>NACO/SACS identified high risk group for HIV</td>
<td>Villages seeking care from traditional healers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Night shelters</td>
<td>Weaving and Glass industrial workers</td>
<td>Tribal areas with little ventilated huts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>NACO/SACS identified high risk group for HIV</td>
<td>Cotton mill workers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Homeless</td>
<td>Unorganized labour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Street children</td>
<td>Tea garden workers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Orphanages</td>
<td>Villages largely seeking care from traditional healers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Homes for destitute</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Asylums</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Systematic active TB screening in high risk groups through house visits or target population/area visit is the key strategy for active case finding.

The key strategies of active case finding will include:
1. Screening at every visit with the most sensitive screening tool (Chest X-Ray). The screening test is not intended to be diagnostic and people with positive results on the screening test will undergo diagnostic evaluation.

Screening strategies deployed will include community and institutional screening.
   i. Community screening can be done by:
      1. Inviting people to attend screening at a mobile facility or a fixed facility. Invitations may target specifically people within a given vulnerable group, those who have had recent close contact with someone who has TB and people with symptoms of TB
      2. Going door to door to screen households
   ii. Institutional screening:
      1. In healthcare facilities: Systematically perform active screening of vulnerable individuals attending hospitals and other health care institutions
      2. In congregate settings: Systematically perform active screening of vulnerable individuals in shelters, old age homes, refugee camps, correctional facilities and other high risk locations such as specific workplaces.

2. Linking to nearest TB diagnostic facilities will ensure confirmation of diagnosis thereby ensuring early detection.

A well designed ACSM strategy will be adopted and integrated with the planning process for ACF which will result in a multiplier effect in case finding efforts. Partnerships will also play a key role in ACF primarily for optimum utilization of resources and skills which exist in the health care system outside the government including partner agencies, private sector and in the community. The programme will utilize manpower in RNTCP and its partner organization working for TB control; and support of manpower in general health services.

Activities for ACF
1. Sensitization of the political and administrative leadership in the states.
2. Active case finding in a campaign mode conducted in 3 rounds during the year.
3. Large scale IEC through print and electronic mass media and local channels about the campaign
4. Stringent planning and monitoring at the national, state, district and block level by the programme leadership.
5. Identify and map high risk / vulnerable population in local area. If additional information is available locally, it can be used for prioritization of target groups. Symptom screening will be done in identified and mapped target groups only (not in general population).
6. Use high sensitive tool like CXR upfront followed by specific tool like rapid molecular tests to optimize yield.
Over 80% of people with TB first attend the private sector\(^2\), yet substantial diagnostic delays occur, and diagnosis and treatment are of variable quality\(^3\). This, combined with the absence of drug quality controls, leads to drug resistance. This urgently necessitates enhanced engagement with the largely diverse and heterogeneous private sector which accounts for at least half of those treated for TB in India. Studies conducted since the 1990s have documented the extent to which TB is diagnosed and treated in the private sector, as well as the prevalence of largely inappropriate diagnostic and treatment practices.\(^4\)\(^5\) Patients from low-income households lose several months of their income in the process of paying for inappropriate diagnostics and treatments before starting approved therapy\(^6\). As a result, there are delays in diagnosis, high out-of-pocket expenditure, and irrational or unsupported treatment. Patient treated by private providers are not usually notified to the RNTCP, despite existing government orders to that effect [Annex K]. Patients cared for by private providers rarely receive sputum testing, and DST. Similarly, public health services such as surveillance, adherence monitoring, contact investigation, and outcome recording rarely reach privately-treated TB patients. Thus, diagnosis and treatment of TB in the private sector is both a problem and an opportunity.

The NITI Ayog\(^7\) has recognized that social security framework in the health sector cannot be realized without engaging the private sector and recommended the Government to take stewardship role. Effective engagement of the private sector on a scale commensurate with their dominant presence in Indian healthcare is crucial to achieve Universal Access to TB Care.

**Achievements**

RNTCP has long acknowledged the need to engage providers outside the public sector. Partnership guidelines have been in place in some form since 2002, and some notable progress has been achieved with medical colleges. Recent efforts, supported by GF-supported project ‘Ashhya’, have improved participation of civil society NGOs. Private providers, however, remain a critical and elusive gap in partnership efforts.

Major gains have been made in garnering support for engaging the private sector from the highest quarters in the country which has led to significant achievements. This includes the ground breaking executive order by the Government of India mandating the notification of all TB patients from the private sector (Annex K). To facilitate TB notification, the programme has developed a case-based web-based TB surveillance system – NIKSHAY. This provides a platform for notification of TB patients from both public and private sector providers. Since a mandatory TB notification order was issued in

---

\(^2\) Private sector referred to in this section is everything outside the ambit of the government run public health initiatives


\(^5\) Uplekar MW, Shepard DS. Treatment of tuberculosis by private general practitioners in India. Tuberce 1991; 72: 284–90


\(^7\) National Institution for Transforming India (NITI ayog) is a Government of India policy think-tank established in 2015 to replace the Planning Commission.
2012 through 2016, more than 0.7 million TB patients had been notified from the private sector. Especially notable was the effort and contribution from states of Maharashtra and Gujarat, which implemented 80% of signed ‘partnership schemes’ nationwide, and contributed more than 25% of all private notifications.

Innovative approaches for attracting TB notification from private sector by linking access to services and ICT support have been implemented. This includes “Universal Access to TB care” a PPM intervention implemented in Patna, Mehsana, Mumbai and Nagpur demonstrated what is required to reach TB patients seeking care in private sector at large. The interventions also demonstrated use of PPIA at Mumbai and Patna. In 2015, only three of the districts contributed 18% of national TB patient notifications from private sector.

The need of additional human resources for PPM was addressed with the sanctioning of 764 PPM coordinator positons, one for each state and district. Programme guidelines for engagement of NGO and Private Providers were updated in 2014, expanding number of partnership options to 22 from 10.

Pediatricians were engaged for improving TB detection in children and accelerating access to quality TB care interventions. The interventions offered rapid molecular tests, specimen transport, advocacy and engagement with pediatricians, resulting in more than 20,000 presumptive pediatric TB patients tested from four cities since 2014. The Indian Academy of Pediatricians (IAP) is collaborating with the programme for comprehensive training of pediatricians on TB management.

A reduced cost to patients of 33-66% of select TB diagnostics offered by accredited private laboratories was achieved by the IPAQT, which has provided a platform to bring WHO-approved tests at affordable prices to patients in the private sector. Under the Initiative, 144 private sector laboratories have been networked to provide four quality tests for TB at or below the ceiling prices. From 2013 to 2016, more than 400,000 patients accessed reduced cost TB diagnostics via this initiative. The programme also collaborated with the Indian Pharmaceutical Association to engage with community pharmacies systematically in select states.

Medical colleges contributed an impressive 2,90,470, 20% of all forms of TB cases diagnosed by RNTCP in 2015, and stepped up support to drug resistant TB services by establishing 15 (of 65) culture and DST laboratories and 65 (of 141) DR-TB centers.

Corporate sector engagement is largely made through collaborative efforts with the UNION’s Call to Action initiative. The initiative has encouraged large corporates like Gas Authority of India Limited (GAIL), Travel Corporation of India (TCI), National Thermal Power Corporation (NTPC) and DLF to support TB control efforts. The UNION led AXSHYA project supported by GFATM, has sensitized

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Achievements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Executive order by the Government of India mandating notification of all TB patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. More than 0.4 million TB patients notified from the private sector till 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. “Universal Access to TB care” PPM intervention projects implemented in 4 cities, Patna, Mehsana, and Mumbai contributed to 18% TB patient notification from private sector reinforcing the role of private sector in TB elimination in India.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. A case based, web based TB surveillance system – “NIKSHAY” developed to facilitate notifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Additional human resource provided to enhance support for PPM activities upto district and sub-district level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Significant cost reduction of select diagnostics achieved by innovative initiatives. 131 private sector labs networked to provide four quality tests for TB at or below the ‘ceiling prices’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25,000 rural health care practitioners and expanded to facilitate TB notification from private providers.

In recent years, our understanding of the role of private providers has increased considerably as a result of patient pathway surveys, Standardized Patient studies, and analyses of private drug sales. Recent publication\(^8\) from the programme estimating TB patients in private sector based on drug sales in the market gave more insight into the magnitude of the problem in private sector.

**Challenges**

The biggest challenge has been the scale of private sector engagement which considering the size of India’s private sector is meagre. The paradigm shift in approach envisioned in NSP 2012-17 could only be implemented at demonstration sites.

Funding for implementing the PPM initiatives remains inadequate especially when funds for programme interventions are less or limited, it is one of the most vulnerable to cuts. Though the budget for PPM was increased to 12% in the last NSP, it has been mainly used for salaries for TB Health Visitors, leaving little for new field activities or ongoing NGO engagement. Multiple administrative hurdles to disbursements for services contracted under existing partnership schemes often resulted in delayed or non-payments to partners. Despite updating the National Guidelines for partnership, uptake of schemes remained stagnant. Delays in payment, lack of clarity on performance expectations and poor partnership management capacity are some of the barriers to uptake of the schemes. There is a fundamental lack of trust for financial partnerships outside the public system. In addition, there is neither a systematic needs assessment for partnership nor adequate capacity at the local level to identify areas of partnership in TB care. Existing norms of costing for many services under partnership options are lower compared to their market values. Ineffective financial flow warrant pay per service model. However, absence of detailed costing of services makes it challenging to move towards the pay per service model.

Many of the PPM interventions are partner or donor supported. Funding partners and donors are increasingly investing and focusing on private sector engagement. However, often their targets, goals, and approaches are not aligned with (current or proposed) national strategies and priorities. In the absence of a policy for private sector engagement it causes friction and tension between the agencies. There are multiple partners working for TB services in country. But, there is lack of collaborative and monitoring framework to synergize their efforts for common cause. There is also a challenge of synergizing locally tailored interventions with

a uniform central PPM results framework. This results in innovations not supported which leaves innovators dis-incentivized.

Only 295 of the 764 PPM coordinator positions have been filled, and limited efforts have been made to build their capacity. Budgetary flexibility given under PPM head to support engagement of NGO/PP and for innovation has not been utilized at all, by any states in the country in the last NSP period. Diagnostics and drugs are often in limited supply and reserved for public provision which therefore usually are not extended to the private sector patients. While the programme has made certain services such as CBNAAT available which attract private providers to avail access for their patients, the services are not marketed or made accessible to private providers, hence patients do not receive them unless they attend public health facilities. Advocacy with the private sector too has remained ineffective. There are some efforts to disseminate STCI but with very moderate success. In addition, collaboration with Indian Medical Association (IMA) and CBCI could not move in NFM grant support of the GFATM. There is still lack of clarity on roles of AYUSH in TB patient care and hence, engagement with AYUSH practitioners is currently guarded.

There are regulatory mechanisms but, are largely limited. Government order on TB notification does not have any legal binding. Enforcement of Schedule H1 is variable, as also, implementation of the Clinical Establishment Act. There are a few sporadic efforts from the states of Chhattisgarh, Punjab, Himachal Pradesh, and UATBC intervention sites to use H1 schedule benefits to support surveillance, but there are no systematic large scale efforts.

**Guiding principle for reaching out to patients in the private sector**

The NSP period 2017-2025 will see services are established as per Standards for TB Care in India to privately-managed patients. Standards for TB care in India, mandatory TB notification, NIKSHAY, ban on sero-diagnostics and amendments in H1 schedule are among the existing tools to improve TB care services in private sector. Regulatory tools, however, are limited, and partnership is the preferred way to move forward. Programme staff must understand that RNTCP needs private providers more than private providers need the RNTCP.

The learnings that guide the efforts to invoke support from the private sector and provide public services to its patients include the following:

1. The government will be an enabler and not see itself as the sole provider of TB care.
2. “Go where the patients go” and currently around half of the TB patients go to the private sector. This should be true of investments to address this fact as well.
3. The cost of involving the private sector is not high. It is almost the same or marginally higher than the cost in the public sector.
4. Investments in involving the private sector yields significant return in case detection, with doubling or even trebling of the case notification rates.

Collaboration with and participation of the private sector in TB services will increase by the acceptance of the following by RNTCP:

1. Internationally approved diagnostic and treatment protocols
2. Reliance on market forces rather than normative exhortation
3. Increased use of accreditation and contracting
4. Further outreach to private laboratories
5. Increased control over TB drugs, and
6. Innovative use of information and communication technologies for TB notification and treatment adherence monitoring

---

Collaboration with and participation of the private sector in TB services will increase by the acceptance of the following by RNTCP:

1. Internationally approved diagnostic and treatment protocols
2. Reliance on market forces rather than normative exhortation
3. Increased use of accreditation and contracting
4. Further outreach to private laboratories
5. Increased control over TB drugs, and
6. Innovative use of information and communication technologies for TB notification and treatment adherence monitoring

---

9 The notification specifies, “The Chemist, while selling Schedule H1 drug, would, however, be required to comply with the requirements for the sale of drugs covered under the said notification in respect of requirements of sale of these drugs against the prescription of an RMP and maintenance of sale records as specified therein.” This prohibits OTC sale of all anti TB drugs.
5. Public health actions to support the private sector provides for better outcomes related to access, notifications, adherence, treatment outcomes and cost savings.

**Objectives**

This strategy is designed to systematically engage private providers on a scale commensurate with their role in the India health system. The annual number of TB cases notified by private providers needs to increase ten-fold, from 0.2 to 2 million annually, or 56% of total case notification, by 2020. The programme will take responsibility to monitor and improve quality of care, with indicators including the proportion of privately-notified cases that are micro-bacteriologically confirmed (50% by 2020) and the treatment success rate amongst privately notified cases (90% by 2020). Programme subsidies for diagnosis and treatment, as well as access to patient financial support, will ensure that no TB patients face catastrophic financial expenses, where ever they seek care.

**Strategy**

The proposed strategy amounts to a total transformation of the way in which the programme has engaged private providers heretofore. It will be systematic and large-scale, rather than ad hoc and insignificant. It will capitalize on advances in information and communications technology and on India’s drive towards digital financial inclusion. Mistrust will be replaced by constructive partnership. Rather than compete with private providers, the programme will work with them to deliver quality STCI services to the entire population. Rather than additionally burdening existing under trained and over-stretched staff, the programme will contract professional agencies with the skills and capacity to engage with large number of providers. For the first time, budgetary resources commensurate with both the problem and the opportunity of private sector care will be allocated to address the challenge.

The overall strategy is to provide an ecosystem with an explicit framework that outlines interventions for collaborating with the private sector, and earmark resources to support its execution. The broad pathway to reach TB patients seeking care in private sector is depicted in the figure below:

**Path way to reach patients seeking care in private sector:**

1. **The first step will be to get notification of all TB patients diagnosed or treated in private sector through effective engagement of private providers.**
2. **Provision of diagnostics and drug services is expected to attract private providers and would benefit TB patients in terms of cost and quality.**
3. **Patient support is the key to ensure completion of treatment and monitoring of care for private sector.**
4. **Establishment of a strong surveillance and quality improvement systems will ensure coverage and effectiveness of interventions.**
5. **Enhance management capacity of the system to engage private providers at a scale commensurate to their presence and to extend services to almost double the patients than those managed at present; and effective use of ICT support as a force multiplier.**
1. Increase Private Health Provider Engagement

Private providers will be considered as assets in government’s efforts for reaching all TB patients for TB care and control. The programme will establish systems of engagement which give value proposition to private health care providers and ensure quality of patient care. The approach will be to first capture all TB patients by attracting TB notification from private providers and then work to improve the quality of care.

The value proposition for private providers to attract/sustain TB notifications, and to monitor/improve quality of care would include (1) access to free drugs and diagnostic tests as per STCI, (2) patient-centric adherence support to their patients for retention in care, (3) incentives and/or enablers to providers to take care of their business interests, and (4) respect for providers’ autonomy within the ambit of STCI.

The first step to provider engagement will be complete census/mapping of providers. All key providers including private doctors (both allopath and AYUSH), chemists and laboratories will be mapped. Existing list of health facilities registered with NIKSHAY, professional associations or Government agencies will be used to prepare a comprehensive census of providers. A universal census will provide platform for identification and prioritization of key providers for engagement to achieve better efficiency in terms of patient coverage. Engagement of professional agencies (like those supporting drug marketing) to conduct mapping and prioritization of providers should be considered, especially when private providers are in large numbers like in urban area.

Sensitization and motivation of private providers either through CMEs, personal communication, peer pressure or professional associations needs to be reformed. It is critical to highlight the importance of unique processes followed while motivating the providers. Operationalization of this process requires appropriate capacity building. Enhancement of capacity of staff (like that of medical representatives) has a very big role to play in sustaining the relationship with providers. Informational presentations and discussions should provide healthcare providers with valuable scientific and clinical information about TB management that may lead to improved patient care. The programme, by itself or in association with recognized institutes will develop various training courses for self-learning or certification of providers as a part of capacity building and recognition of providers.

Once engaged, continued interaction and coordination are needed with providers to sustain the rapport. A ‘customer service’ approach and procedures for that like feedback system, grievance redressal system, and recognition system for following good clinical practices will be established.

An option of contracting a dedicated management unit will be considered. In such cases, the agency will conduct mapping of private health care providers and will be responsible for their end-to-end engagement.

Considering the large number of AYUSH providers (3,598 hospitals and 25,723 dispensaries) in India, efficient symptom identification and referral system will be established to enable early diagnosis. Existing referral linkages will be strengthened and some new linkages will be established based on provider mapping. This will result in early and accurate diagnosis of TB and timely initiation of treatment, improved access to TB care, less number of patient drop-outs and increased patient satisfaction. They will also be involved in expanding the patient support system.

Private Providers will be provided incentives to promote TB case notification, ensure treatment adherence and treatment completion. The incentives will be provided upon notification in the TB reporting software i.e. Nikshay through a smooth and programme integrated direct beneficiary transfer.

The incentive of Rs 1000/- for notification per TB patient and reporting of treatment outcome to the private providers will be provided through Direct Benefit Transfer.
2. **Free drugs and diagnostic tests to TB patients in private sector**

Provision of free drugs and diagnostic tests to TB patients in the private sector will reduce cost, attract private providers and their patients and ensure quality of care. There are two approaches for ensuring access to these services to patients in private sector – access to programme-provided drugs and diagnostics through attractive linkages; and reimbursement of market-available drugs and diagnostics.

Programme-provided rapid diagnostics and daily FDC drugs will be available for diagnosis and treatment of TB patients in private sector, respectively. The programme will ensure forecasting and procurement of adequate diagnostics and drugs to provide for patients in private sector. Effective provider and patient-friendly linkages to support delivery of these services to meet the need of private health care providers will increase uptake of free services provided by the programme.

- For access to diagnostic services like CBNAAT from the programme, the scope of existing system of specimen collection and transport used for patients in tribal and difficult areas and for DR-TB patients, will be expanded to establish linkages for giving diagnostic access to patients in private sector. Private providers/NGOs/Volunteers will be engaged and incentives/honorarium would be integrated in the programme e-payment system.
- For access to daily FDC from programme, the drugs will be provided to the doctor, chemist, stockist or distributor, depending on the local context. Incentives will be provided to cover their cost of stocking, distributing and dispensing the FDC.

There will be instances when the programme need to purchase diagnostic services, such as when demand for rapid diagnostic tests or chest X-ray exceeds availability in public facilities or when patients and their providers exhibit strong preference for private channels. In such cases, services provided by the private sector will be reimbursed considering market rates of diagnostic tests and drugs. A system of smooth reimbursement to providers for validated services will be established. Purchasing of these services will be integrated into RNTCP e-payments for timely and reliable reimbursements. Empanelment and validation mechanisms will be established to ensure transparency and quality. Financial norms for purchasing various diagnostic services are revised and accounted for in the costing of this NSP.

3. **Increasing support for patients seeking care in the private sector**

Public health response to all TB patients notified from private sector will be the responsibility of public health system. Patients support services i.e. adherence support, drug susceptibility testing, comorbidity detection, ensure treatment outcomes, infection prevention measures would be extended to patients in private sector. To ensure equitable care the programme will need additional manpower capacity enhanced by ICT tools.

Benefit given to TB patients in public sector will be extended to patients in private sector including social welfare support. These benefits would empower patients to demand notifications, if integrated/triggered patient honorarium and social welfare payments are linked to notification and adherence. A system will be put in place to provide incentive/enablers to patients for validated services via Aadhar-enabled direct benefit transfer (DBT). All patients, irrespective of their place of treatment, will be linked to applicable social support schemes (Annex I) for ensuring adherence and successful completion of treatment. To address financial & nutritional hardship the patient and family undergoes due to TB and to reduce catastrophic cost to patient due to TB, cash incentive of Rs. 500 per month will be provided for every TB patient through Direct Beneficiary Transfer.

To extend public health services to the large number of TB patients in private sector, programme needs to have availability of human resource as per the augmented norms proposed in this NSP. The section on HR in the chapter on HSS details the HR restructuring to support the large scale requirements. Wherever required, programme will use NGO’s to expand these services. These services should be purchased using e-payment services with validation system in place.
4. **Enhance Surveillance and Quality improvement**

A comprehensive surveillance system for TB patients and their providers will be built into eNikshay. This will be supported by a call centre for user-friendly private reporting and patient monitoring. Quality improvement programme will look at care provider-wise, and guide feedback and engagement efforts by programme managers and staff. To improve the quality of care, surveillance will be strengthened by patient feedback systems, periodic prescription audits, drug sales surveys, chemist surveillance through Schedule H1 and laboratory surveillance including private laboratories. Appropriate quality assurance system for laboratories in private sector shall be established. Introduction of components of RNTCP Quality Assurance system in other laboratory quality assurance systems like NABL, CAP etc. will be carried out to increase scope of these mechanisms and increase access to quality assured diagnosis.

Drug sales monitoring will be used as baseline indicator. The approach of tracking drug sales provides an important guidance to the programme as to the extent of coverage and the need for additional efforts. The drug sales information will be incorporated at least state-wise or district-wise or in major cities where possible, into the routine programme monitoring and evaluation (M&E) framework.

In order to improve surveillance across all sectors and geographies and for more accuracy of information, the MIS system will be unified. Routine collection of Aadhar number, geo coding, contact numbers and bank details will maximize scope of surveillance. The drug voucher system will open up the opportunity to bring prescriptions on anti-TB drugs given by private practitioners, under the surveillance. The system can identify practitioners to work upon for improving prescription practices. Systematic use of the information gained from voucher analysis will be used to influence practices of private practitioners.

A similar opportunity is currently available if Gazette notification of Schedule H1 drugs is effectively executed and information of prescription details is utilized. To monitor quality of prescription, TB patients will be monitored from Schedule H1 surveillance. In addition, prescription audit will be carried out with support of Drug Controller of the state. A system of regular feedback to the providers for quality of care aspects will be part of the engagement process. The following audits will be conducted on an annual basis to monitor quality parameters of TB care in private sector.

1. Prescription Audit
2. Data audit
3. Financial audit
4. Standardized patients studies
5. Patient feedback survey

5. **Expand ICT support**

Effective ICT support will be the cornerstone for facilitating engagement, user-friendly patient reporting, patient centric adherence monitoring, and for smooth financial transactions. The eNikshay platform, supported with efficient call centres and provision of sufficient digital tools to field staff and providers, will be key to reaching patients in private sector.

An ICT based, web-based TB case management and surveillance system of the programme will be enhanced to eNikshay. All the patients will be registered in this system by their certified providers as beneficiaries based on their demographic details, mobile number and a bank account number. An alpha-numeric Beneficiary ID will be generated for patients, which will be used by him/her to avail the services at every point. TB diagnostic test reports (Digital X-ray and GeneXpert test) and monthly prescriptions will be updated in this MIS, which will assist TB case management system in maintaining an end-to-end diagnostic and treatment trail of the patient.
All the TB drugs will be bar coded or QR coded. At the time of dispensing drugs, pharmacy will verify the prescription for regimen as per Standards for TB Care in India and capture information as mandated under H1 schedule. Pharmacy will also access patient case details in web-based TB case management system based on beneficiary ID assigned to the patient and will scan bar codes/QR codes for capturing information of drugs refills in the system. After six continuous drug refills, the treatment outcome will be generated as 'Treatment Completed'. In case of failure of drug refill, the system will generate an alert. Health workers will establish contact with such patients and will provide support for resuming their treatment. Adherence system using ICT platform will be strengthened with the use of additional emerging tools such as 99 DOTS, Pill box etc.

6. **Build management capacity**

Based on the estimates, the programme will be dealing with more TB patients in the private than in public sector in most of the states. The programme will need additional manpower to carry out field operations, as well as enhanced managerial capacity and ICT tools for large-scale engagement. Within the programme, three layered differentiated capacity building requirements need to be met. These are for planning and contracting at the national level, management and monitoring at the state level, and engagement and sustainable relationship with private providers at the district level.

Capacity building will be done of district TB officers, PPM coordinators and sub-district level staff for relationship management with private health care providers. Addition of sub-district level HR with appropriate TOR of STS/STLS will increase partnership capacity. In Urban areas, additional HR such as TB-HV with focused job responsibility to engage private providers will be ensured.

In addition, to reach out to huge number of practitioners, a **dedicated management unit** will be established, with outsource mechanism, to augment programme capacity to monitor and manage patients seeking care in private sector; wherever required. Targeted approach would be adopted to identify districts which would require such support of external agency. Broadly, this will include Districts with large proportion of urban population, large urban corporations, Districts with huge presence of Private Sector, districts in which the number of patients in private sector exceeds the capacity of public health sector to reach them and Districts which need additional support due to gaps in basic health care delivery systems. Under the scheme based approach, a package of managerial services which will include provider engagement, linkages, patient support and monitoring will be outsourcing to an external agency.

Overall, contracting management capacity is the key to reach out to large private sector including NGO and other service deliver partners. Efforts will be made to enhance the contracting capacity of the district and state level.

A comprehensive costing of different types of services being rendered to the TB patients for diagnoses, treatment and other public health services will be done during NSP period. This would enable to plan for outsourcing or insourcing of services from the private providers with packages which would be appealing to both the parties involved and lead to a more harmonious partnership. Also a mechanism of linking the costing for various services to either inflation rates or other accepted norms for a revision every few years will be inbuilt to ensure that the rates are reflective of the current market prices of the time. These costing norms will be embedded within programme budget. The programme will gradually move away from scheme based approach to performance based contracts. This is largely to improve the fund flow and transactions with private providers. The purchase of services will be carried through direct benefit transfer with appropriate validation mechanism.
The current partnership options will be revised with revision in costing of services and to accommodate additional services to implement components of revised Technical and Operational Guidelines.

7. **Strengthen regulatory approaches**
To ensure sustainable and long-term success, regulatory measures will be taken into consideration. TB notification regulation will be strengthened with sufficient legal backing on violation of not notifying a TB patient. To ensure the quality of anti-TB drugs, its combinations, standardized dosages and treatment regimens for the patient is treated in public sector or private sector, regulation of drug sales and distribution in public or private sector in the country will be established. Include effective regulatory provisions in National TB Bill.

Work with State Drug Controllers to strengthen H1 schedule implementation. Effective use of Gazette notification of H1 schedule will help to ensure quality of treatment regimen and also help to capture information of practitioners who prescribe anti-TB medicines. This may help to identify practitioners for prioritizing or targeting to encourage TB notification from them. Expansion of scope of provisions under schedule H1 shall be considered to link anti-TB drug dispensing with TB notification.

Coordination mechanism will be established with Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority of India (IRDAI), Insurance Schemes of Government like RSBY, Janashree Bima Yojana or Private Sector Insurance Agencies, for ensuring that the patients which are getting treatment in private nursing homes/ hospitals etc. are being managed as per STCI and the notification of such case to the RNTCP is ensured.

8. **Health care providers within public sectors (Outside Ministry of Health & Family Welfare)**
There are large numbers of health facilities run by public sector other than Ministry of Health & Family Welfare under different ministries of Centre/State Governments. There are corporate sector companies in the public sector like Coal India, SAIL etc. which run their own healthcare set ups. Usually these facilities cater to a “captive population” who receive subsidized or free services from said facilities. Additionally ministries like defence, railways, home ministry etc. have their own medical services set up. The programme will have a mechanism to regularly communicate update in TB services to these facilities and a communication channels will be established at all levels. There will be regular meetings with these organizations to ensure smooth implementation of uniform TB care services by all health care providers. Efforts will be continued to set up RNTCP services in all these health facilities. At the same time, those facilities which do not opt to have RNTCP set up, will be engaged for reporting of TB patients and their treatment outcomes. All patient support services will be extended to their patients in equate to public health facilities.

9. **Involvement of corporate hospitals**
32% of the national bed strength is in the 150 plus private corporate hospitals. Current, strategy through partnership option provides HR at par with medical colleges and reimbursement for reporting and for diagnostic and treatment services. Incentive mechanism and diagnostic and treatment services will be extended to these corporate hospitals as mentioned below. In addition, ICT advances and interface will be used to facilitate reporting from these corporate hospitals which have their own MIS. Additional capacity enhancements of patient management will be used to ensure treatment adherence and patient retention as value addition to these corporate hospitals. A coordination mechanism will be established at the Centre to regular communications with central corporate units to ensure uniformity in implementation of TB care services across all its units.

10. **Coordination with partners**
Coordination with multiple development partners, donor agencies and implementing partners working for TB care and control in the country will be strengthened through a collaborative
framework. This framework will be established at Centre, State and District level and will provide platform for facilitating engagement, to avoid duplication of efforts and for knowledge management. The scope of the forum will not be limited to only implementation level but, it will be used to reach for funding gap in implementing strategies of National Strategic Plan.
What does it mean in the context of this NSP for TB elimination in India?
Provide sustained, equitable access to high quality TB treatment, care and support services responsive to the community needs without financial loss thereby protecting the population especially the poor and vulnerable from TB related morbidity, mortality and poverty.

What does it entail?
1. Provide universal access to free, standard treatment services for all TB patients in the country
2. Country wide scale up of innovative implementation strategies to address the twin objective of treatment support and adherence services for TB patients by adoption of ICT tools and partnerships.
3. Increase the access and uptake by key affected populations of high quality TB prevention, diagnosis and treatment services in order to bring about perceivable impact.
4. Patient centered approach for providing care and support

• CHAPTER 7: TREATMENT SERVICES
• CHAPTER 8: PRIORITY POPULATION
• CHAPTER 9: PATIENT SUPPORT SYSTEMS
Introduction

Universal access to free, standard treatment services for all TB patients in the country encompasses an ambit of services in and around each patient’s care cascade. Strengthening of these patient centered treatment services in RNTCP with enhanced capacity to rapidly accommodate new drugs and treatment modalities will be the cornerstone of the current NSP.

The revised technical and operational guidelines for TB control in India, define the major groups of TB patients who are offered standard treatment regimens. Patients are classified based on drug susceptibility results; the categories are drug-sensitive, and mono, poly, multi and extensively drug resistant. For drug-sensitive TB patients, the thrice weekly intermittent TB regimen being used since programme inception has been switched to a daily FDC regimen for treatment of all TB patients. The principles of treatment for drug-sensitive TB with a daily regimen is to administer a daily fixed dose combination of first-line anti-TB drugs in appropriate weight bands for pulmonary and extrapulmonary TB in all age groups.

The principles of treatment for TB are:
1. Screen all TB patients for rifampicin resistance and provide additional drugs.
2. For drug sensitive TB, administer daily fixed dose combinations of first-line anti-TB drugs in appropriate weight bands for all forms of TB and in all ages, including four drug FDC in the intensive phase and three drug FDCs in the continuation phase.
3. All Rifampicin Resistant /Multi Drug Resistant TB patients are subjected to baseline Kanamycin and Levofloxacin drug sensitivity testing all across the country. In addition country has introduced extended DST to all second line drugs in a phased manner.
4. RR/MDR-TB patients without additional drug resistance are treated with standard shorter course treatment regimen for MDR TB. And in those with mixed patterns of resistance, standard MDR TB regimens were modified as per revised guidelines.
5. Where DST patterns for extended DST are available, the management protocol will follow essential optimized regimen for patients diagnosed with drug resistance other than MDR and XDR TB.
6. Minimize leakage across the care cascade and maximize adherence through innovative patient support strategies and real time monitoring.

As part of new drug and treatment services introduction, the programme plans to introduce shorter MDR TB regimen as per WHO treatment guidelines. With extended DST for second line drugs being available upfront, the NSP 2017-2025 also envisages country wide scale up of new drugs like Bedaquiline (being currently provided in six sites across the country) and Delamanid.

Holistic approach to patient centered care encompasses appropriate TB treatment strategies coupled with adequate support structures for treatment adherence. This NSP articulates innovative implementation strategies to address the twin objective of treatment support and adherence services for its patients by adoption of ICT tools and partnerships. The use of support structures to empower patients and their families’ is crucial to achieve the goals of NSP 2017-2025.
Achievements

The NSP 2012-2017 made bold advances in treatment strategies with introduction of new drugs and modifications in the existing drug regimes. The core of treatment delivery system has been direct observation. In order to make the services more patient friendly, the last NSP rolled out strategies such as the concept of family DOT, counsellors for MDR TB and adoption of ICT tools for monitoring the swallowed doses while the patient is at home. Implementation of flexible NGO schemes (revised version released in 2014) and adoption of standards of TB care in India across the country is also ongoing.

The achievements of NSP 2012-2017 in providing patient friendly treatment services includes the following.

1. In the past five years, more than 7 million TB patients have been detected and initiated on treatment with 1.2 million additional lives saved in the country.
2. Among all cases registered under the RNTCP, treatment success rates are consistently about 85% in new cases and 75% among treatment experienced cases.
3. NSP 2012-2017 took significant strides in acceleration of MDR TB management country wide. Exponential scale up of Programmatic Management of Drug Resistant TB (PMDT) was completed to achieve country wide coverage in March 2013. In the past 5 years, 120,299 DRTB patients have been detected and put 110,808 on treatment (data up to Q3 2016). While thousands of lives were saved with the standard MDR/XDR TB treatment protocols, the changing trends in global MDR treatment strategies forced the programme to review its data and introduce individualized treatment regimens based on DST patterns. Further, there was a constant demand from the clinicians and programme managers to expedite possibilities to deploy DST guided treatment for DRTB other than MDR and XDR that may not be optimally managed with standard first and second line treatment currently available within the programme. In March 2016, the Revised Technical and Operational Guidelines were rolled out with detailed regimen build up for early treatment stratification guided by DST results.
4. All HIV infected patients showing the four symptom complex are offered rapid molecular tests along with daily treatment regimen with FDCs for improved treatment outcomes in the high risk group.
5. Newer weight bands for adult and pediatric dosages are created.
6. Bedaquiline conditional access programme (CAP) roll out in six sites across the country. The CAP has been implemented in 2016 across six sites in the country with a country wide scale up planned in 2017-2020.
7. Standards of TB care for India (STCI) to guide all health care providers on expected standards / quality of care across all sectors.
8. Guidelines for management of extra pulmonary TB (Index TB) were developed and are being used for improving the treatment of such cases.

Challenges

1. No information on treatment practices, adherence and treatment outcomes from the private sector, amounting to a majority of the TB patients in the country.
2. The lost to follow up and death rates among treatment experienced are unacceptably high. For the cohort of treatment experienced patients registered under the programme in the entire country during 2015, 12% were lost to follow up and 8% died during the course of treatment.
3. No availability of information on the long term outcomes of treatments. With an absence of long term outcomes in TB patients, information on treatment efficacy cannot be established. The high rate of recurrence reported by limited studies is another cause of concern.
4. The current approach to treatment monitoring is health system centric instead of being patient centric; prioritizing programme comfort instead of patient needs.
5. Although treatment success rates among new cases are satisfactory at the national level, many districts report lower than expected success rates.
6. Accessibility to drug regimens containing injections in the rural areas is currently a concern owing to the guidelines limiting the use of injections by trained health provider.
7. Delay in initiation of treatment of DRTB owing to non-availability of pretreatment evaluation services at the district and sub district level. Insufficient coordination between the district and sub district levels in communicating the test results and the treatment plan.

**Strategies**

1. **Initiation of appropriate treatment for all diagnosed TB patients.**
   a. Provision of daily regimen for all TB patients
   b. Introduction of shorter regimen for MDR TB
   c. Incorporation of new treatment strategies with newer drugs
   d. Effective strategy to ensure STCI for patients treated by private providers – *discussed in details in the chapter on private sector (Chapter 6)*
2. **Implementation of TB treatment services in health facilities and communities.**
   a. Decentralisation of treatment services with ICT support and other innovative mechanisms.
   b. Promote appropriate treatment adherence mechanism including provision of mobility support to workers, patient enablers and insurance to TB patients, social support systems, nutrition support, ICT mechanisms, pharmacovigilance etc. *Discussed in details in the chapter on patient support system (Chapter 9)*
   c. Extend patient support services for patients in private sector which are the same as for patients in the public sector mentioned above - *Discussed in details in the chapter on private sector (Chapter 6)*
   d. Roll out of DST guided ITR in a phased manner for DRTB
3. **Regular and long term (2 years post a successful treatment outcome) follow up and rehabilitation of all treated TB patients**

**Activities:**

1. **Treatment of patients in the private sector:** Once the patient is notified the responsibility of these will also be on the public sector to provide patient support that will ensure successful completion of treatment. This will include patient friendly adherence support, screening for comorbidities and drug resistance. Mechanisms will be developed to ensure treatment regimens as per the STCI and quality assured drugs in the private sector. The mechanisms to ensure treatment regimens as per the STCI will include
   a. Effective use of Schedule H1 provisions
   b. Use of reimbursement mechanisms
2. **Treatment of DSTB:** The priorities of the current plan include change of regimen for DSTB using daily FDCs as per patient's weight band with augmented continuation phase and intensified treatment support systems using ICT. This will be scaled up across India by the end of 2017 and also extended to the private sector in a phased manner over the next 5 years. Additionally activities for the prevention of relapse and development of drug resistance in pan sensitive patients during first line standard treatment will be undertaken, few of which will include:
i) Extension of CP in cavitary and/or bilaterally/extensive disease
ii) Nutrition support
iii) Explore role of immunomodulators and vaccines both preventive and therapeutic
iv) PKPD studies
v) Explore targeted drug delivery
vi) Explore nano-aerosol technology

3. Treatment of DRTB
   a) Management of INH Mono and Poly drug resistance: INH mono-poly resistance is known to be around thrice as prevalent as RR-TB. A specific 9-12 month treatment regimen has been initiated to manage H mono-poly resistance with available first line drugs strengthened with a fluoroquinolone and a second line injectable. This regimen will be scaled up across the country by end of 2017.
   b) Shorter MDR-TB regimen: The shorter MDR-TB regimen will be scaled up across the country by the end of 2017 for all RR-TB patients that meet criteria for this regimen.
   c) Regimens containing newer drugs: In 2016, RNTCP introduced Bedaquiline for management of RR-TB patients with additional resistance to fluoroquinolones and/or second line injectables. The access to Bedaquiline will be expanded across India by the end of 2017. RNTCP will also introduce another new drug Delamanid by the end of 2017, after conditional approval from DCGL, and undertake research with support of ICMR to evaluate the use of these newer drugs in combination therapy to reduce the duration of DR TB regimens to 4-6 months.
   d) DST Guided DR-TB Regimen: XDR TB patients with or without resistance to any other first or second line drugs, who do not consent or are not eligible for newer drugs will be managed by an appropriate regimen designed based on their DST results. This approach will also be scaled up along with Bedaquiline expansion across India by the end of 2017.
   e) Non-tuberculous Mycobacteria (NTM) treatment: NTM are environmental opportunistic microorganisms that can cause human disease with signs and symptoms similar to MTB. These organisms can affect the lungs or any other extra-pulmonary site. The diagnostic approach to NTM will require a mix of various technologies like smear microscopy, rapid molecular tests, conventional culture and species identification and the treatment will vary depending on the species of NTM identified. RNTCP will initiate addressing NTM and will scale up NTM diagnosis and treatment across India by the end of 2018.
   f) Decentralization of DR-TB treatment: As RNTCP moves to universal DST with rapid molecular tests available at every district, second-line DST testing, shorter MDR-TB treatment and DST guided treatment with or without newer drugs, the volumes of patients to be managed at centralized DR-TB centers will delay treatment initiation as well as increase the numbers lost to follow up. To mitigate this anticipated loss and promote DR-TB treatment initiation within 24-48 hours, RNTCP will decentralize district DR-TB centers to initiate standard H mono-poly or the shorter MDR-TB regimen at every district level that will be established within close proximity of the CB-NAAT site. Patients with additional resistance to second-line drugs, drug intolerance or patients who are seriously ill will need regimen modification and will be managed at the nodal DR-TB centers.
   g) Palliative care and rehabilitation: Patients with drug resistance in whom an appropriate regimen cannot be formed, even with addition of newer drugs, as per the WHO recommended regimen, will be offered palliative care through the nodal DR-TB centers or at the community level under guidance of the nodal DR-TB center. Necessary palliative services including pain relief, surgery, prosthesis, psycho-social support, and respiratory
physiotherapy will be provided. Any additional cost required for palliative care and rehabilitation will be covered under existing insurance schemes like NHPS\textsuperscript{10}.

4. **Making care cascade monitoring a programme priority**: Activities for ensuring care cascade monitoring for enhanced outcomes include the following:
   a. Incorporation of local care cascade information into the district plans
      i. Identification of active groups/local structures in villages/taluk/cities for supporting the care cascade.
      ii. Uptake of available RNTCP partnership options/partnership guidelines
      iii. Collaboration with ongoing public health programmes in the district for TB advocacy, ICF, care and management and subsequent rehabilitation of TB patients.
      iv. Notification of all stakeholders participating in the care cascade for direct benefit transfers, monitoring and notification of TB patients.
   b. Sensitization of state and district officers on the need to budget supplementary activities required for care cascade support. These include administrative and health functionaries at all levels.
   c. Perform regular monitoring through review meetings and onsite checklists at district and state level. Incorporation of “Care Cascade Check” indicators in the programme management reports of the state and districts.
   d. Provide trainings of programme staff, partners, and volunteers on the reporting formats used for monitoring the care cascade. As the “e-gurukul”\textsuperscript{11} system becomes operational, these trainings will be shifted on the electronic interface.
   e. Patient feedback of service provided will be taken through the helpline “Call centre” support. The information obtained will be shared with individual treatment supporter via “e-Nikshay” for remedial actions, if any.
   f. Direct beneficiary transfer to all notified health facilities and patients will be done through e-Nikshay interface.
   g. All the required logistics and coordination required for quality uptake of the patient care cascade will be provided by the programme.

5. **Empower patients** with information, support structures and enablers/honorariums to initiate and sustain treatment
   a. Sensitization of communities through ACSM
   b. Each patient notified under the Nikshay platform starting from diagnosis, need to be enrolled for ICT enabled treatment adherence support and direct benefit transfers as per norms.
   c. Patient support services will be linked with individual patient registry in e-Nikshay. Once the patient gets diagnosed by a public or private partner, the patient gets registered in e-Nikshay. Treatment information is further updated regarding the regimens, dosages, adherence mechanism and benefit schemes chosen. Accordingly timely alerts and feedback mechanism will get initiated through e-Nikshay.
   d. The facility for ICT enabled benefit transfer through smart cards will be made available from the district TB office. In situations where the patient gets tested and treatment

\textsuperscript{10} National Health Protection Scheme (NHPS) provides health insurance cover of up to Rs. 1 Lakh to the poor. The scheme is projected to benefit about 10 Crore families in the first phase. The main beneficiaries of the scheme would be the families belonging to the BPL category or those in the list of deprivations as per socio-economic caste census data.

\textsuperscript{11} E-gurukul app is a platform of GOI for e learning under development
initiated somewhere else, support for patient enablers will get started based on the need for the same.

e. Through the e-Nikshay platform, automated reminders on treatment initiation, interruption and follow up will be sent to treatment provider and patients. In addition, SMS support services will also be made available for awareness, counselling and reminder alerts.

f. An offline app for patient education will be available for free download. Information regarding TB diagnostic and treatment services, enablers, grievance through call center support will be linked on the app through e-Nikshay.

g. Nutritional support/enabler honorarium linked to continuation on treatment through e-Nikshay.

h. Each District has been provided with a counsellor for providing necessary counselling. In addition, the Treatment supervisor and district accountant will monitor the availability of ICT enabled treatment adherence support and fund movement, respectively.

i. Several innovative models of involvement of patient support groups in rural areas have been found to be successful in providing a holistic approach to TB care. Such models will be replicated based on the availability of applicable norms

6. Expanding options for adherence monitoring: A choice of the following modalities will be provided to the care provider and the patient, to enhance adherence.

a. Mobile based “Pill-in-Hand” adherence monitoring tool: In this mechanism, each time a patient opens the drug package, a hidden number which is printed on the drug package behind the pill appears. The patient will send a missed call to this number on the drug package. The call will be documented at a centralized ICT unit. And thus, an electronic treatment record of each patient will be maintained to monitor the treatment adherence.

b. The patient can also be remotely monitored with the help of Interactive Voice Response (IVR), SMS reminders. A call center has been established for care cascade and adherence monitoring

c. Specially designed electronic pill boxes or strips with GSM connection and a pressure sensor can be used to monitor the pill consumption by tracking the weight of the remaining pills.

d. The treatment provider can use the Patient Compliance toolkit; a mobile app for patients to report treatment compliance using video, audio or text message.

e. An automated pill loading system, which will load the dosage as per the pre-programmed settings, can be used. Medication dispenser: a color-coded reminder system built in the dispenser that will hold drugs.

f. Treating doctors can be provided with innovatively designed ICT enabled smart cards to educate them on correct TB prescription methods. Doctors will then give these cards to TB patients, instructing them to SMS the server/customer care centre (CCC) the unique code on the card which will register them on the network and also SMS the unique codes printed on their TB drugs as they take them. The CCC will then deliver phone interventions like reminders to take medicines, financial incentives, follow up calls, and TB health tips via SMS and phone balance recharge, mobile APP for scheduled dose reminders and alerts.

g. A Short Messaging service (SMS) gateway to be made available by which the patient can report day to day events like pill consumption, minor side effects or his need for help through simple and shortcut SMS templates. The gateway can allow incoming services in pre-recorded or Interactive Voice Response (IVR) mode to inform patients about their test results, as follow up reminders and as periodic counselling messages.
Since the very inception of the TB control programme in India, it has tried to adopt a holistic approach to treatment and patient care. Providing treatment enablers in the form of financial incentives and nutritional support can provide for increased adherence and treatment success rates. To meet these twin objectives of adherence and treatment support, the programme has launched a “Direct Benefits Transfer (DBT)” scheme to financially aid TB patients.

There has been an increase in rural access to banking facilities over the years especially with the recent push through PM “Jan-Dhan Yojana”. Subsequently DBT initiatives in social welfare schemes have also shown promise, making it prudent that the programme too adopts a similar approach towards treatment enablers.

By using an ICT based benefits transfer system, the programme aims to prevent leakages and delays in transfer of benefits with effective targeting so that the benefits only flow to the intended beneficiary. The DBT is implemented via a smart card linked to AADHAR. This provides a tamper-proof storage of user and account identity. It allows for a comprehensive multi-sectoral multi-scheme benefit to the treatment care receiver. AADHAR linked smart cards will help streamline treatment when the patient comes in contact with the programme at different locations. This smart card acts as single unique identifier for patients across private and public sector, insurance and across different central and state social welfare schemes that may become available to the treatment receivers over the course of his treatment. A smart card based system can be implemented utilizing infrastructure set up for other public healthcare schemes like Rashtriya Swasthya Bima Yojana (RSBY).

A smart card provides improved patient identification, needed in the light of treatment incentives like financial support to be provided to the patients. At the same time from a programme perspective, it ensures increased administrative efficiency by providing medical records management. Multiple health programmes across the globe are utilizing smart cards in

---

Aadhaar card is a universal identification number for every citizen of India. The Aadhar card is a biometric card that stores an individual's personal details in a government database, and is fast becoming the government's base for public welfare and citizen services.
different capacities. This smart card will have inter-operability with a range of devices including ATM machines for payments, patient information recording devices for programme’s recording and reporting and follow-up activities. The level of utilization and utility of the smart card will be scaled up as internet infrastructure develops across India.

8. **Improve clinical support**

RNTCP will strengthen initial risk stratification, management and follow up for all TB patients by:

   a. Developing and implementing minimum clinical criteria for hospitalization/specialist consultation (e.g. hypoxic, high respiratory rate, BMI<16, etc.)
   
   b. Developing criteria for high-risk patients for encouraging systematic referral to specialist consultants. For example, extensive radiological disease, severe underweight status, or comorbidities will indicate early specialist consultation, rather than waiting for clinical failure
   
   c. Including therapeutic nutrition for severe undernutrition (BMI less than 16)
   
   d. Developing and implementing simple systematic relapse surveillance, with at least phone calls being made to patient cohorts at 6 and 12 months to ascertain if relapse has occurred. This will be particularly important as a monitoring tool with regimens transition in the programme. This will also address the missing millions and decrease the initial loss to follow up. A major shift proposed is to initiate every TB patient on treatment at the site of diagnosis.
   
   e. Systematic detection and management of post TB sequele using an algorithmic approach explaining the role of health care workers at different levels and linkages.

9. **Pharmacovigilance activities**

Current treatment regimens for TB patients are long and complex and their toxicity and adverse drug reactions (ADR’s) when used in certain patient subgroups may not be completely profiled. Several of these patients will also be treated for other co-morbidities, including HIV infection, at the same time. The introduction of new drugs and the repurposing of medicines beyond their primary indication are expected to become more widespread as RNTCP strives to improve outcomes for its patients. The programme defined objective is to strengthen linkages with the pharmacovigilance programme of India (PVPI) for monitoring, identification and detection of signals. This will act as a feedback mechanism to regulators and RNTCP at regular intervals. RNTCP will also establish programme wide pharmacovigilance activities at national, state, district level and block levels that will also include the private sector.
CHAPTER 8
PRIORITY POPULATIONS

Introduction

‘Priority populations’ are a disadvantaged group of people as compared to others, due to their reduced access to medical services and the underlying determinants of health. Vulnerable, underserved or populations at risk of TB infection and illness constitute a challenge for TB control. These can be segregated into following broad groups.

Table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People who have INCREASED EXPOSURE to TB due to where they live or work</th>
<th>People who have LIMITED ACCESS TO QUALITY TB SERVICES</th>
<th>People at INCREASED RISK of TB because of biological or behavioural factors that compromise immune function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•Prisoners, sex workers, Slum dwellers, miners, hospital visitors, healthcare workers, factory workers, construction workers, and community health workers</td>
<td>•Migrant workers, women in settings with gender disparity, children, geriatric populations, physically challenged, tribes and populations living in hard to reach areas, refugees or internally displaced people, illegal miners, and undocumented migrants</td>
<td>•People who live with HIV, have diabetes or silicosis, undergo immunosuppressive therapy, are undernourished, use tobacco, suffer from alcohol-use disorders, and inject drugs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Several studies have suggested that the disease burden in these special groups is higher than in the general population. TB control activities in these special populations are being provided by the government and non-government sector, mostly NGOs, private practitioners and corporates, but, none have been able to produce a perceivable impact. The current NSP acknowledges the significant actions required to address the key populations and elaborates it in the sections below.

Common strategies for intensifying TB control activities in key populations:

1. Mapping and identification of priority populations across the country:
   a. Vulnerability factors (threats) will be used to create assessments of size and locations of vulnerable groups
   b. In addition, an assessment will be undertaken within the most vulnerable communities of interest to identify specific health needs relating to identified threats.
2. Inclusion of mapped population in NIKSHAY for state and district specific action plan for identified population
3. Establish priorities for action which will be based on the analysis and needs, effectiveness, feasibility and resources.
4. Customized advocacy and communication for the defined priority population
5. Use of rapid molecular technology and other better diagnostic modalities
6. Early linkage to RNTCP spectrum of support services till the completion of treatment and follow up

Source: Stop TB Partnership, Global Plan to End TB – Paradigm Shift, 2015. Few groups added to match the Indian context
7. Intersectoral/ inter-ministerial coordination
8. Intensive efforts for TB case detection using novel approaches
9. Use a campaign approach to address TB in priority populations
   a. National campaign against TB: widespread awareness using mass media, community
      engagement, utilizing trained community volunteers in identifying TB symptomatics. Local
      self-government to spearhead the campaign.
   b. Active case finding in high risk groups/areas: Active TB case finding strategies will be
      prioritized based on risk group so as to maximize yield.
      The tools for active case finding include:-
      i. Community level campaign followed by active case finding with symptom
         screening. Approaches such as health camp, use of mobile health services etc.
         will be explored.
      ii. Periodic Digital X-ray
      iii. Rapid molecular diagnostics tools will be a part of the arsenal for ACF.
10. Community engagement: For the above mentioned interventions to succeed, it will require
    active and extensive community engagement at all levels. This will be a local self-government
    driven community mobilization effort and NGO supported initiatives.

Activities:

2. Mapping, and need assessment
3. Demand Generation for TB programme services campaign
   a. Inclusion of TB control on agenda of different department meetings/forums
   b. Patient’s support group
   c. Establishment of grievance redressal mechanism
   d. Involvement of non-health actors
4. Case finding:
   a. Capacity building of all healthcare providers catering to key population areas
   b. Active case finding (ACF)
      i. Identification and designating ICF sites
      ii. Utilization of mobile medical units and integration with routine health camps
      iii. Use of POC tests
   c. Specific case finding action plan for the geographically and socially defined groups
5. Involving AYUSH and traditional healer for linkage of priority population
6. Involvement of NGO/CBO/Non-government healthcare providers
7. Role model /Champion among successfully treated TB patient group and involvement in
   awareness component
8. Mobile van with comprehensive diagnostic services (X-ray/Rapid molecular test/Autoanalyser) in
   difficult to reach areas for early diagnosis and linkage to flexible treatment
9. Better incentive to treatment supporter
10. Peer counseling:
    a. Treatment preparedness
    b. Support for treatment adherence
    c. Create enabling environment to all TB patients
11. Promoting uptake of RNTCP schemes for better reach of TB control programme in the defined
    community
12. Corporate Social Responsibility support for priority population pocket in terms of spreading
    awareness, making available diagnostic and treatment center expansion
13. Real time monitoring of programme data for each priority group for assessing the progress and
    impact
14. Research:
a. KAP studies, Health seeking behavior studies, feasibility studies, implementation research for addressing TB in priority groups, operational research
b. Comparative analysis based on vulnerability to TB and redefining the plan for specified population with specific timelines

**Specific activity to aggressively control TB in High Priority Districts**

For the year 2016-17, the programme has categorized and prioritized the districts across the country based on the following criteria:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Categorization</th>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Number of districts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High TB</td>
<td>Total TB case notification rate &gt; 180 per lakh population</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High TB-HIV</td>
<td>&gt;10% Proportion of known HIV positives amongst TB patients tested for HIV</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High DR-TB</td>
<td>&gt; 25% Proportion of relapse out of incident smear positive TB cases</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very low case finding effort</td>
<td>Annual TB suspect examination rate of &lt; 400 per lakh population</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Average</td>
<td>None of above</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High case finding but Low TCNR</td>
<td>Annual suspect examination rate &gt;1200 per lakh population and Total Case notification rate &lt; 80 per lakh population</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Total</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>730</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(TB-HIV: TB and HIV co-infected patients, DR-TB: Drug Resistant TB, TCNR: Total Case Notification Rate)

(For RNTCP programmatic purposes strategies / services are based on population and hence due to high population in urban areas especially municipal corporations, additional districts have been created. As a result the total number of districts in the country under RNTCP is 730)

In these prioritized 184 districts + 4 metros and 1 state (i.e. Sikkim) active case finding will be implemented using the following broad strategies as below in addition to the basic TB services:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Categorization</th>
<th>Number of districts</th>
<th>Broad strategies for implementation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High TB</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>• Village-wise microanalysis to identify high TB pockets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Intensified / active case finding with decentralized diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Visibly improve IEC activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 100% contact tracing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High TB-HIV</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>• Complete utilization of rapid diagnostics for early diagnosis of TB among HIV+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Implementation of Isoniazid Preventive Therapy for all HIV+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Daily regimen TB treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High DR-TB</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>• Testing 100% eligible drug resistant TB suspects within 3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Treatment support mechanisms to improve adherence and outcomes including linkages for nutritional support for all TB patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Implement long-term follow-up policy at 6, 12, 18 and 24 months post treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very low case finding effort</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>• Village-wise microanalysis to identify village with &lt;5 suspect examined per 1000 pop annually to prioritize case finding activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Focus IEC activities (Panchayati raj institutes members and schools)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Active screening of all health facility attendees for TB suspects and ensure testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For the purposes of the NSP, specific actions for a few high risk groups have been expanded, although this does not represent prioritization of these populations. It is important to note that people who are likely to fall into one of these categories are also likely to be part of one or of the other groups.

**TB-HIV**

**Introduction**

TB-HIV collaborative activities between Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme (RNTCP) and Department of AIDS Control (DAC)/NACO started initially in the year 2001. Since then, TB-HIV activities have evolved in line with updated scientific evidence. The National Framework for joint TB-HIV collaborative activities was developed and defines a National, State and District level coordinating mechanism. Components such as dedicated human resources, integration of surveillance, joint training, standard recording with reporting, joint monitoring with evaluation, and operational research are strategically implemented. The key approach suggested as per the National Framework Nov 2013 is below:

**Strategic Interventions**

1. **Strategies for reducing the burden of TB among People living with HIV/AIDS**
   a. **Intensified case finding activities in HIV care settings**: Programme will emphasis on use of a simplified clinical algorithm for TB screening that relies on the absence or presence of four clinical symptoms (current cough, weight loss, fever and night sweats) to identify people eligible for further diagnostic work-up of TB. Also rapid molecular test CBNNAT will be offered to all presumptive TB cases among PLHIV for early diagnosis of TB in settings such as ART centres, Link ART Plus centre (LAC+), Link ART centre (LAC), Integrated Counselling with testing centres (ICTC) and Targeted Intervention Projects (By 2017)
   b. **Airborne infection control in HIV/TB Care settings**: People living with HIV are at higher risk of developing TB and TB is cause of high mortality among PLHIVs. National Airborne infection control guidelines recommend implementation of AIC measures at all HIV/TB Care settings. These measures include:
      i. Developing time bound action plan to implement AIC measures at all Centres.
      ii. Training of MOs and Nursing Staff in AIC guidelines
      iii. Risk assessment at all centres with recommendations of implementing AIC guidelines.
      iv. Health care workers surveillance for TB and appropriate AIC measures at all centres.
   d. **Early initiation of ART**: All PLHIV with less than 500 CD4 count will be eligible for the ART. Considering this PLHIV already registered in Pre- ART care, additional one lakh fifty thousand patients will require to be started on ART. Additionally nearly 50,000 patients will be added annually per year.

2. **Strategies for reducing the impact of HIV among TB patients**
   a. **Provider Initiated HIV testing and Counselling (PITC) among presumptive TB cases notified in government and private facilities to be done.**
   b. **Early initiation of ART among HIV infected TB patients**: Systematic measures to extend financial support to the HIV-infected TB patient for travel to ART centre for evaluation
and treatment initiation. Efforts will be made to optimize outreach activities undertaken by different categories of NACP outreach workers.

c. **Nutritional support for TB and HIV patients:** Linking all TB and HIV patients for nutritional support through the public distribution scheme (PDS).

d. **Ensure every patient has been put on daily anti TB regimen, along with ICT adherence with 2 years of post-treatment follow-up**

3. **Strategies for establishing mechanisms of Co-ordination**

   a. **Improved surveillance:** Implement a case-based, web-based electronic surveillance system to enable real time monitoring of inter-programme linkages.

   b. **Improve co-ordination:** Utilization of technological advancements to aid patient management, like estimation of viral load in CBNAAT machines.

4. **Strategies for high priority 20 selected Districts**

   a. **Early Diagnosis:** Increasing access to rapid diagnostics for PLHIV including HIV testing services and strengthening sputum collection and transportation.

   b. **Innovative strategies for addressing local epidemics especially in 20 high priority districts**

   c. **Decentralized TB-HIV treatment delivery services through community led models**

   d. **Strengthening social support and institutional support for HIV-TB co-infected patients**

   e. **Private sector engagement in TB HIV Collaborative activities**

   f. **Newer initiatives such as community based HIV testing, test and treat, implementation of Targeted Interventions strategies under NACP**

**To ensure complete co-location of CBNAAT facilities and ART centres /COEs in the country for early diagnosis of TB.** Expertise of COEs will be utilized for capacity building and research activities. The department of AIDS control to expand coverage of whole blood finger prick HIV screening test at all PHIs. General health system needs to provide storage facility for HIV testing kits, budget for implementation of AIC measures at HIV TB care settings (600 ART centres, LAC, ICTC), and budget for ART drugs. Availability of adequate stock of Isoniazid is to be ensured. E-Training module to be used for all health care staff.

### Diabetics, Tobacco use and Alcohol dependence

**Introduction**

About 10% of TB cases globally are linked to diabetes. People with diabetes have a two to three times higher risk of getting infected with TB, compared to people without diabetes. People with TB and coexisting diabetes have a four times higher risk of death during TB treatment and higher risk of TB relapse after treatment. A large proportion of population with both diabetes and TB remain undiagnosed, or are diagnosed at a late stage. Due to lack of early detection and treatment, complications from TB–DM co-morbidity lead to high cost on treatment and out-of-pocket expenditure. Early detection can help improve care and control of both diseases. Epidemiological surveys and studies have been completed and published or are currently being conducted in India on the association between diabetes and TB.

Tobacco use is the leading global cause of preventable death (6 million deaths per year). Tobacco-related mortality in India is among the highest in the world. The percentage of Indian women and men aged 15-49 yr. who smoke tobacco is 2.9% and 24.3% respectively. In addition, 18.4% of women and 32.9% of men chew tobacco. Tobacco consumption in India is responsible for half of all cancers in men and a quarter of all cancers in women, in addition to representing a major threat to many other conditions, such as cardiovascular diseases, chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases, and TB.

**Strategic Interventions**

1. **Development and Implementation of collaborative framework for TB associated with Diabetes, Tobacco use and Alcohol consumption**

This framework will identify the diabetics and tobacco/alcohol users among TB patients and support them to quit tobacco/alcohol use as well as provide screening for TB among this vulnerable group.
visiting public health facilities across the country. As per NSP 2012-2017, efforts will be made in the next five years to collaborate closely with the national programme for prevention and control of Cancer, Diabetes, Cardiovascular disease and Stroke (NPCDCS) and National Tobacco Control Programme for screening of TB patients.

2. **Linkage with other National Health Programmes:**
   In order to reach out to populations with multiple risks / vulnerabilities, RNTCP will also be linked to other development schemes and national programmes such as the National Tobacco Control Programme, NGOs working with the International Organization for Migration in the Ministry of Labour, National Programme for Non Communicable Diseases, special programmes for those with occupational risk such as silicosis with the Ministry of Labour, rail travel and other support available for special groups. This will be coordinated through NGOs where appropriate and active involvement of civil society will be sought to implement, monitor and track progress on these interventions.

**Proposed Interventions:**
1. **Bidirectional screening** of TB and DM
2. Identifying current tobacco user and brief routine cessation advice: Ask, Advice, Assess, Assist and Arrange, will be provided by the programme,
3. Smoke free health care facilities
4. Linkage of all current tobacco/alcohol addicts to the cessation/de-addiction clinics
5. Treatment support Counselors to be appointed at each health care facility (by 2017)

**Poor, undernourished, economically and socially backward communities**

**Introduction**
It has been observed consistently that poverty is associated with much higher risk of TB infection, prevalence of TB disease, and of adverse outcomes of treatment including mortality.

In India the prevalence of self-reported TB was found to be 5.5 times higher in the lowest income quintile compared to the highest income quintile according to the National Family Health Survey-3. TB also worsens poverty, as the poor spend a much higher proportion of their income on the direct and indirect costs associated with TB care. The END TB strategy highlights integrated patient-centered care and prevention as its first pillar.

**Strategic Interventions**
1. **To make the TB programme pro-poor in its overall orientation,** and respond to the challenges faced by them in a flexible, innovative and sustainable manner. This will involve the following:
   a. Mapping the poor and vulnerable populations in the jurisdiction of each district TB programme.
   b. Identification of the barriers to care and adherence in the district.
   c. Removal of those barriers by appropriate administrative and other actions, and monitoring the results of these actions by indicators which report on case finding, case-holding and treatment outcomes.
   d. Creation of a **grievance reporting and redressal mechanism**, which will empower this socially vulnerable and marginalized population.
   e. To consider a **group life-insurance scheme** for all TB patients to prevent the catastrophic consequences for the family in the event of death during TB treatment.

2. **To evolve a high-quality patient-centered model of TB care for the urban and rural poor**
   a. Launch of new regimens
   b. Better surveillance of patients with severe disease to enable hospitalization for management of severe disease, serious adverse events etc.
   c. Comprehensive assessment of patients at diagnosis
   e. Patient support at the family and systems level (Family DOT)
f. Provision of nutritional and financial support/vocational training, and effective treatment of comorbidities.

h. Assessment of TB patients at the end of treatment with regard to symptoms, functional status and degree of disability if any. To enable those affected by sequelae access to social assistance schemes available for the rehabilitation of the handicapped (soft loans, employment quotas).

3. **To engage and mobilise community participation in TB control:**
   a. Long term engagement with ASHAs, ANM, AWW, Self-help group, and community level health workers.
   b. Utilize the ACSM components of the TB programme to create a community of actors in the government, PRI’s, non-governmental, educational and other social sectors who will be committed to TB control.

### Tribal population

#### Introduction

Tribals constitute 8.08% of the country’s population, which makes India the second largest concentration of tribal communities in the world. There are 635 tribes in India located in five major tribal belts across the country. Seven Indian states account for more than 75 percent of the tribal population. The main concentration of tribal people is the central tribal belt in the middle part of the India and in the north-eastern States.

#### Strategies for case-finding in tribal population:

1. The Tribal Action Plan (TAP) emphasizes:
   a) Strengthening early reporting,
   b) Enhancing treatment outcomes, and
   c) Closer supervision of tribal areas.

2. Promoting locally adapted IEC messages and patient education material in place and having operational research results to assist in planning and implementation of RNTCP in the tribal pockets

#### Strategic Interventions:

1. Mobilize political will and involvement at local levels through involvement of local elected representatives, and PRIs
   a) Use community meetings of PRIs as a forum to initiate community-based activities like early detection, sputum collection, facilitate treatment, monitoring and social support for needy patients
   b) The District Collector, BDO and gram sevaks could be used to institutionalize PRIs to garner support for community mobilization for DOTS
   c) Involving and students to facilitate treatment
   d) Involving primary school teachers in disseminating IEC material
   e) Using chemists, grocers’ shops and other places frequented by tribals to disseminate information on facilitate treatment

### TB Control in Hilly and Difficult Terrains

#### Introduction

Though the TB control programme in India has achieved the global targets, yet the TB control activities in India has always faced challenges in the hilly, desert and geographically difficult areas due to issues with accessibility. Some of the states with tribal and hilly terrains in India have been
reporting a high incidence of not only drug sensitive but also drug resistant TB cases. Hence it becomes even more important to strengthen the TB control activities in these difficult areas.

**Strategic Interventions**

1. **Mapping of the vulnerable population** in the difficult areas with regards to accessibility and health needs.
2. **Increase accessibility to TB control activities** for case finding as well as case holding in the hilly and difficult terrains which will involve the following:
   a. Designating all PHIs with a laboratory as a microscopy centre irrespective of the population served.
   b. Establishing a *designated sputum collection booth* at every village with dedicated human resource with a monthly minimum remuneration for collecting and transporting sputum to the nearby laboratory. Scaling up of usage of mobile medical units with rapid molecular tests and digital X-Ray facilities, which may be integrated with general health services.
   c. Upfront rapid molecular testing to further reduce the delay in diagnosis.
   d. Providing an incentive may also be considered for government employees in the difficult areas who are involved in TB control activities. Incentive can be on per case basis.
   e. Upfront rapid molecular testing to further reduce the delay in diagnosis.
3. **ACSM and Community Mobilization**
   a. Involvement of the traditional healers/quacks which has got substantial presence in the hilly and difficult areas.
   b. Mobile unit with display of IEC materials along with facility for sputum collection and transportation.

**Substance Dependence and those at risk for Sexually Transmitted Infections (HIV)**

**Introduction**

The key populations with regard to HIV are defined as: men who have sex with men (MSM); Transgender persons (TG) with Hijra, women in sex work (SW) and people who inject drugs (PWID). There is a clear evidence to suggest that socioeconomic and cultural factors in these populations lead to barriers in accessing health care including TB care.

**Strategic Interventions**

**Key strategies** that perhaps need to be established to facilitate improved case-finding, testing and treatment of TB among these groups are given below:

1. **Detection; Testing and counselling**: stigma free and community sensitive TB testing and counselling, integrated with concurrent HIV testing and treatment facilities.
2. **Peer outreach at TB testing and treatment sites**: HIV-TB peer educators will be linked with TB service providers. These can be peers from targeted intervention or HIV care and support programmes. Community or peer-led measures will likely be more successful in these KPs and facilitate ICF.
3. **Make available safe virtual or physical spaces** (for example telephone hotlines, or drop-in centres) for these KPs to seek information and referrals for care and support to TB treatment. DIC’s for KP’s under TI’s can have a TB corner and weekly/ fortnightly awareness sessions, testing days and follow-up testing days for these TB. These can be organized in coordination with district TB officers (DTOs).
4. **To increase coverage and access to comprehensive HIV- TB prevention, treatment, care, support and related services for KPs, their sexual partners and families and their clients (SWs in particular).**
5. **Community led early detection and treatment services**: TB related services can be dispensed through community based organizations (CBOs)/ NGOs, civil societies, to ensure adherence and side-effects management among KPs.
6. **Health system strengthening:** Strengthening referrals between prevention, care and treatment for TB, in light of needs and issues pertaining to KPs.

### TB and Pregnancy

**Introduction**

TB in pregnancy is a special situation that requires care and management strategies that improve outcomes for both the mother and baby. RNTCP and RCH division proposes specific activities to address the special needs of this clinically and socially vulnerable populations.

**Strategic Intervention**

1. Estimating the burden of TB amongst pregnant women.
2. Intensive case finding among pregnant and lactating women, women having infertility, women who smoke, women having diabetes, HIV/AIDS, malnutrition; who constitute clinically vulnerable risk groups for TB.
3. Increase awareness about high risk and available TB services and support to clinically and socially vulnerable women through specifically targeted national mass media campaign.
4. Establishing linkage with RMNCH+A, private sector & strengthening linkage with NACP: Symptom screening, physical examination and necessary investigations for ruling out TB during Antenatal/ post-natal check-ups, RI sessions, VHNSD, and ‘Maternal with Child Tracking System’ (MCTS).
5. Development of collaborative framework with RNTCP. Several development partners are working with RMNCH+A and possibilities for collaboration must be explored.
6. Offering Universal DST through use of rapid molecular testing for diagnosis of pulmonary and extra-pulmonary TB among pregnant and lactating women
7. Prioritizing support for access to transportation, nutrition, counselling and social welfare schemes
8. Exploring and advocating for micro-insurance and health covers for management of complications due to TB among pregnant and lactating women and support for assisted reproduction in cases of infertility due to genital TB.

### Paediatric Population

**Introduction**

TB in paediatric patients often goes undetected due to nonspecific symptoms, paucibacillary disease and non-uniformity of diagnostic modalities in the public and private sector. In 2015, Paediatric TB cases accounted for 6-7% of the total TB burden, but, due to under diagnosis, the actual paediatric burden is closer to 10%. The current figure (6-7%) represents diagnosis in the public sector and the case notification from private pediatricians likely reflects the missing paediatric cases.

**Strategic Interventions**

1. Dissemination of paediatric screening guidelines which can act as easy reference for both public and private doctors and healthcare workers
2. Review implementation of the paediatric guidelines and evaluation of the impact of the guidelines.
3. Ensuring an adequate and regular supply of paediatric FDC which can be provided to the public and private sector free of cost to the patient.
4. Systematic screening of household contacts and other close contacts for active TB and increase uptake of Isoniazid prophylaxis therapy.
5. Systematic screening in Nutritional Rehabilitation Centers (NRC’s) and Anganwadi Centers (AWC’s)
6. Development and dissemination of strong IEC material on RNTCP extended services for diagnosis and treatment for private diagnosed Paediatric TB patients. Dissemination of STCI to the private sector as reference manual while managing presumptive paediatric TB patients.
7. Engaging the Indian Association of Pediatricians for notifying all diagnosed TB patients to RNTCP. Adequate and regular supply of paediatric FDC which can be provided to public as well as private paediatric TB patient’s free of cost.
8. Associate with other ministries and departments to address the missing cases in the community.
9. Target maternal and child health programmes for local awareness and symptomatic screening for early diagnosis and referral of samples for CBNAAT/ other technologies.
10. Use existing programmes such as Rashtriya Bal Suraksha Karyakarm (RBSK) Programme to reach the paediatric population, spread awareness regarding TB and ensure the instant referral of symptomatic cases to nearest health facilities.

---

**Prison Inmates and staff of prisons/jails**

**Introduction**

There are, at present, 1401 jails in India. On 31 December 2015, there were 4,19,623 inmates in these jails and the combined occupancy rate of all the jails was 114.4%. Information on the number of prisoners with TB is scarce. Prison conditions can enhance the spread of TB, due to overcrowding, poor ventilation, weak nutrition, inadequate or inaccessible medical care, etc. The best strategy for preventing TB in prisons is early diagnosis combined with effective treatment. Measures to reduce overcrowding and to improve living conditions for all prisoners should be implemented to reduce transmission of TB.

**Strategies for case-finding in prisons:**
1) through self-referral; 2) through screening at entry to the prison; and 3) active case-finding among prisoners.

**Strategic Interventions:**
1. Ensure collaborative efforts between the prison and general health services.
2. Conduct screening of new inmates and periodic screening of prisoners and penitentiary services staff to detect active TB and HIV in a timely manner.
3. Ensure airborne infection control, including protective measures for staff.
4. Provide preventive therapy for individuals with LTBI and early initiation of ART in case patient is HIV positive.
5. Ensure continuity of care for released prisoners who are on treatment for TB and for individuals who are on treatment before entering the prisons.
6. Provide psychological counselling and support for prisoners to improve TB and HIV treatment adherence.
7. Strengthen TB control in prison-based programmes by raising awareness about TB among inmates and prison medical and non-medical staff. Avoid transfer of TB patients, but, in the case of transfer, improve communications between prisons to ensure treatment follow-up after transfer and facilitate transfer to community clinics for released prisoners.
8. Link scientific research, including Operational Research to the development of specific knowledge about treating TB in the prison environment.
CHAPTER 9
PATIENT SUPPORT SYSTEMS

Introduction

TB causes catastrophic economic impact on both the individual suffering from the disease and their family. The National economy is also affected with estimates suggesting significant impact. RNTCP provides free diagnosis and treatment to patients registered under the programme, but many patients experience associated health care costs, including payment for ancillary drugs and extra diagnostic tests, as well as considerable non-medical costs, including expenditures for transport and accommodation. Furthermore, patients and family members who care for them may suffer reduced income due to lower productivity and/or loss of employment opportunities, and may experience the intangible costs related to social stigma associated with their illness.

Adherence to regular and complete treatment is one of the key factors for cure. To assess and foster adherence, a patient-centered approach to administration of drug treatment, based on the patient’s needs and mutual respect between the patient and the provider, should be developed.

A good patient support plan is imperative for treatment success and will be developed at the time of initiation of treatment. This support will include the following:

1. Initial and frequent follow-up counselling of the patient and family members.
2. Supervision of treatment by a trained treatment supporter (a health worker or community volunteer).
3. Locally managed additional nutritional support.
4. Retrieval of treatment interrupters.
5. Screening for adverse reactions.
6. Appropriate social support scheme.
7. Psycho-social support.
8. Co-morbidity management.
9. Follow-up laboratory investigations.

In addition to addressing the morbidity and mortality due to TB, efforts under this NSP are also geared towards reducing the economic burden of TB on patients and their family. The primary objective of the support plan is to increase treatment adherence and to eliminate catastrophic expenditure by TB patients.

Strategic interventions

Link TB patients and households to the applicable government social schemes and leverage the governments thrust on digital payments to transfer benefits and incentive payments directly to the patient’s bank account.

1. Linking Pradhan Mantri Jan-Dhan Yojana13, AADHAR and NIKSHAY (JAN) for direct cash benefits to patients:
   The programme will adopt a DBT mechanism for transfer of monetary support and incentives to patients. This will ensure the funds reach rightful recipients in a timely manner.

---

13 PMJDY is India’s National Mission for Financial Inclusion to ensure access to financial services, namely Banking, Savings and Deposit Accounts, Remittance, Credit, Insurance, Pension in an affordable manner.
The cornerstones of the DBT mechanism will be:

i. **RNTCP** – In addition to providing funds for DBT, programme will also identify and review incentives and treatment supports to be provided to the patients

ii. **PMJDY** – Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana has introduced banking facilities even to the poorest and geographically remote persons in India. PMJDY accounts will allow for quick establishment of DBT linkages for patients irrespective of their economic strata or geographic location.

iii. **NIKSHAY** – As a case based patient identification system, NIKSHAY will allow for real time tracking of patient eligibility for DBT and ensure quick activation of DBT linkages to patient accounts

iv. **AADHAR** – AADHAR will act as the unique identifier for patients seeking treatment support via DBT mechanism. It is also hoped that in the future the TB number will align with the AADHAR identifier.

An amount of Rs 500 per month will be provided for TB patient notified in NIKSHAY for nutrition support, encourage completing the treatment and covering the catastrophic cost. Linking of Jan Dhan Yojana, Aadhar number and Nikshay identification number will be used for this transaction. Local arrangements need to be made to provide the financial incentives to needy patients who are yet to have Aadhar number and bank account due to any reason.

2. **Reducing the out of pocket expenditure for TB patients**

The programme aims to eliminate catastrophic costs to the patient by providing benefits directly and establishing linkages to existing social welfare schemes. In addition an unexplored area includes the government’s skill development schemes which provide an opportunity for utilizing the time patient spends out of workforce during treatment for increasing his employability post treatment. The programme will explore linkages to schemes like Deen Dayal Upadhyaya Antyodaya Yojana which helps the urban poor by providing skill training and Deen Dayal
Upadhyaya Grameen Kaushalya Yojana which aims at improving employability of rural youth (15-35 years).

The major causes borne by the patient and their redressal mechanism (existing and proposed) are detailed in the figure and its remedial measures in Table below.

The programme strives to limit and eliminate catastrophic “Out of Pocket Expenditure” for TB patients.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Public sector</th>
<th>Private Sector (includes all sectors other than public sector)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cost of Diagnosis</td>
<td>Free</td>
<td>Proposed to be free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost covered by</td>
<td>RNTCP lab network</td>
<td>Reimbursement to private labs or patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost of Treatment</td>
<td>Free drugs and access to medical practitioners</td>
<td>Proposed to be free</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Cost covered by             | Public health system | • Free drugs to be provided to patients seeking care in private sector.  
|                             |               | • Reimbursement of practitioner fees to eligible patients       |
| Nutritional Support         | Proposed as nutrition support to every TB pt | Proposed as nutrition support to every TB pt                   |
| Cost covered by             | RNTCP through DBT | RNTCP through DBT                                              |
| Cost of travel              | Provided under existing guidelines | Provided under existing guidelines                              |
| Cost covered by             | • RNTCP through DBT  
|                             | • Applicable National programmes and schemes | • RNTCP through DBT  
|                             |               | • Applicable National programmes and schemes of the government |
| Wage lost                   | Covered by linkages with other national | Covered by linkages with other national                        |
| Cost covered by             | Linkage with skill development programmes and | Linkage with skill development programmes and                  |

Programme provides access to free diagnostic tests through its network of [xxx] labs.
The programme will extend free diagnostic services to patients seeking treatment in private sector via [xxx].

 Programme provides free access to medical practitioners, drugs and treatment adherence mechanisms.
It will also put in place systems to reimburse expenditures borne by eligible patients in the private sector.

Programme provides travel cost to TB and DR-TB patients and attendant for travel to DTC/collection center during treatment.

Programme will provide means for adequate nutritional intake for patients via supplements or DBT, across patients seeking care in public or private sector.

\₹\text{Wage loss}
Link to existing central and social welfare schemes to assist patients in building skill.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Public sector</th>
<th>Private Sector (includes all sectors other than public sector)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cost of Diagnosis</td>
<td>Free</td>
<td>Proposed to be free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost covered by</td>
<td>RNTCP lab network</td>
<td>Reimbursement to private labs or patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost of Treatment</td>
<td>Free drugs and access to medical practitioners</td>
<td>Proposed to be free</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Cost covered by             | Public health system | • Free drugs to be provided to patients seeking care in private sector.  
|                             |               | • Reimbursement of practitioner fees to eligible patients       |
| Nutritional Support         | Proposed as nutrition support to every TB pt | Proposed as nutrition support to every TB pt                   |
| Cost covered by             | RNTCP through DBT | RNTCP through DBT                                              |
| Cost of travel              | Provided under existing guidelines | Provided under existing guidelines                              |
| Cost covered by             | • RNTCP through DBT  
|                             | • Applicable National programmes and schemes | • RNTCP through DBT  
|                             |               | • Applicable National programmes and schemes of the government |
| Wage lost                   | Covered by linkages with other national | Covered by linkages with other national                        |
| Cost covered by             | Linkage with skill development programmes and | Linkage with skill development programmes and                  |
*Fully paid leave and job security in industrial policy and other appropriate regulations for TB patients will also be explored. Periodic out of pocket surveys will also be undertaken to assess the needs as well as the impact of the interventions to reduce catastrophic costs.

3. **Providing financial and nutritional support to the TB patients.**

In TB as in many other infectious diseases, there is a bidirectional interaction between nutritional status and active disease. Under-nutrition is a risk factor for TB which in turn worsens the nutritional status, generating a vicious cycle which can lead to adverse outcomes (during and following therapy) for patients with active TB including those with MDR TB. This interaction is particularly important in the Indian context where food insecurity and under-nutrition coexist with a large burden of TB. To address this issue it is proposed to launch a scheme to provide a monthly cash incentive for every TB patient through DBT. All individuals with active TB will receive:

a) an assessment of their nutritional status.

b) appropriate counselling based on their nutritional status at diagnosis and throughout their treatment.

c) Appropriate management of malnutrition, if identified. Linkages for extra nutritional support for TB patients or of his contacts on IPT will be extended with existing government schemes like public distribution system (PDS) or applicable food security schemes.

d) Linkages with existing interventions of managing undernutrition like nutrition rehabilitation centers (NRC’s).

4. **Patient-centered approach to treatment**

To assess and foster adherence, a patient-centred approach to administration of drug treatment, based on the patient’s needs and mutual respect between the patient and the provider, will be developed for all patients. A good treatment support plan will be developed at the time of initiation of treatment. This plan will include initial and frequent follow-up counselling of the patient and family members, supervision of treatment by a trained treatment supporter, locally managed additional nutritional support, retrieval of treatment interrupters, screening for adverse reactions, psycho-social support, co-morbidity management, follow up laboratory investigations, and management of post treatment sequela.

A treatment supporter who is acceptable, accessible to the patient and accountable to the health system will be identified and trained. A health worker in the hospital/ health centre may be the best person to provide all the envisaged components of treatment support programme. However, access to such a health worker in person, place and time may be limited since the centre may be far away from patient’s residence, working hours may be restricted and the worker may be away on field visits. Compelling the patient to travel long distance to avail treatment is against the principles of patient centric approach. Hence all efforts must be put in to find a treatment supporter close to the patient’s residence. Accumulating evidence has pointed to the effectiveness of a wide variety of approaches including community and family-centered, which is more achievable for most developing healthcare systems and produce comparable outcomes to directly observed treatment by healthcare worker.

Wherever appropriate, a family member can also be assigned with the responsibility of observing treatment. Such situations may arise with sick and bed ridden patients, paediatric patients, long-day workers, etc. In such situations, the family member who is assigned with the responsibility to
observe treatment will be trained well and supported during the process by a health worker by frequent visits to the house.

Each patient and his/her treatment supporter will be supervised by a health worker. It may be a peripheral health worker in the public health system. If the patient is initiated on treatment by a private health care provider, public health system may offer this supportive role when requested. While observing treatment is one of the best modalities of promoting treatment, other modalities also may be deployed to further enhance adherence to treatment. Intelligent deployment of information communication technologies (ICT) is an example of such modalities. A patient who is unable to undergo supervised treatment will not be denied treatment. Frequent on-job travellers, truck drivers, sailors etc may require identification of a proper treatment supporter. To promote treatment adherence among these patients, ICT modalities like frequent calls, SMS reminders, IVRS etc may be deployed.

Counselling may be required to tackle substance abuse. Nutritional assessment and support, ancillary drugs, co-morbidity management, compensation for lost wages etc. are some other strategies. To avail these, healthcare providers will derive synergies between various social welfare support systems like RSBY, National Family Benefit Scheme, Group Life insurance scheme( Jan Shree Bima Yojana), national rural employment guarantee scheme, corporate social responsibility (CSR) initiatives, and counselling centres to mitigate out of pocket expenses such as transport and wage loss incurred by people affected by TB.

Details of the social welfare schemes, applicable to TB patients are provided at Annex E.
What does it mean in the context of this NSP for TB elimination in India? Prevent the emergence of TB in susceptible populations.

What does it entail?
1. Scale up air-borne infection control measures at health care facilities
2. Treatment for latent TB infection in contacts of bacteriologically-confirmed cases
3. Addressing social determinants of TB through intersectoral approach
Acute respiratory infections (ARIs) are the leading cause of morbidity and mortality from infectious disease worldwide, particularly affecting the youngest and oldest people in low and middle-income nations. These infections, typically caused by viruses or mixed viral–bacterial infections, can be contagious and spread rapidly. Although knowledge of transmission modes is ever-evolving, current evidence indicates that the primary mode of transmission of most acute respiratory diseases is through droplets, but transmission through contact (including hand contamination followed by self-inoculation) or infectious respiratory aerosols at short range can also happen for some pathogens in particular circumstances.

In modern medicine, infection prevention and control (IPC) measures in health-care settings are of central importance to the safety of patients, health-care workers and the environment, and to the management of communicable disease threats to the global and local community. Application of basic IPC precautions, such as Standard Precautions, is a cornerstone for providing safe health care. In an era of emerging and re-emerging infectious diseases, IPC in health care is as important now as ever.

TB infection control is a combination of measures aimed at minimizing the risk of TB transmission within populations. The foundation of such infection control is early and rapid diagnosis, and proper management of TB patients. National guidelines on airborne infection control in all health settings including HIV care settings

### CHALLENGES AT COMMUNITY LEVEL

**Social habits**
- Cough etiquettes not being followed
- Indiscriminate spitting
- Sneezing without covering face
- Alcoholics and mentally challenged patients
- Delay in reaching health facility for specific diagnosis

**Special groups**
- Migrant population, back ward areas and tribal pockets
- Old age homes, poor homes, children homes, jails, hard to reach areas
- Delay in diagnosis in co-morbid conditions like Diabetes, HIV, Cancers, etc.

**Environmental aspects**
- Environmental pollution
- Smoking
- Indoor air pollution

### CHALLENGES AT INSTITUTIONAL LEVEL

**Outpatient facility**
- Patients with chest infection at outpatient settings
- Overcrowding - mixing of patients in queues and waiting areas
- Poor ventilation in the facilities

**Inpatient facility**
- Cough screening, separation, fast-tracking, mask and counseling provision missing
- Infectious patients getting admitted at General wards
- Cough etiquettes not followed in wards
- Overcrowding in the wards – no restricted entries
- Inadequate ventilation and cleanliness
- In ICU and Operative procedures
- Daily reporting of diagnosed patients details to higher centres
were developed that included a combination of simple managerial, administrative, environmental and personal protection measures. Operational feasibility and effectiveness of the guidelines have been conducted in the states of West Bengal, Gujarat and Andhra Pradesh.

**TB infection control in health care and congregate settings:** The National Airborne Infection Control Committee (NAICC) with representations from Medical Colleges, NCDC, NACO, CTD, WHO, Architects and PWD Engineers was established in 2008. Pilot testing of operational feasibility and effectiveness of the guidelines have been conducted in the states of West Bengal, Gujarat and Andhra Pradesh and baseline assessments have been conducted in 35 health facilities.

**Integrating airborne infection control guidelines:** The programme envisages integrating the airborne infection control guidelines of the programme with the general health system guidelines. Activities such as advocacy, guideline awareness and capacity building will be initiated at the state level and subsequently overseen by the general health system.

### SOLUTIONS AT INSTITUTIONAL LEVEL

1. Certification of Health facility for AIC Compliance
2. Develop cough corners/counters - Cough screening, separation, fast-tracking, mask and counseling
3. Posting of specific staff for fast tracking and providing masks
4. Providing N 95 masks to the Hospital staff in High risk settings
5. ACSM at OPD and other settings like Posters, Clippings etc
6. Implementation of AIC in all settings
7. In house AIC complaint facility for treating nomads, destitutes, homeless patients
8. Separate IP facility for bacteriological positive DS/DR TB patients and other airborne infectious patients in major institutions
9. Proper infection control measures in ART centres.
10. Proper follow up of daily reported cases
11. Proper disposal of sputum and infected materials
12. Early diagnosis and initiation of treatment
13. PPE for concerned staff
14. Wet mopping and disinfection
15. Periodic screening of staff
16. Proper ventilation, renovation if necessary
17. Facility risk assessment and reporting
18. Periodic trainings
19. Ongoing monitoring dashboards/checklist for AIC practices at all levels
   a. Community level - LSG, PHI field staff
   b. Institution level – Nurses. IC focal points. heads of institutes.

National Airborne Infection Control (NAIC) guideline will be implemented at high risk centers at DR-TB Centers, ART Centers, C and DST Laboratory. The Implementation of NAIC policy includes following:

- Airborne infection control committee and plan
- Baseline assessment
- Resource planning and budgetary provisions
- Training of health care workers
- Implementation of administrative, environmental and personal protection measures.
- Establishment of health care centres will be in accordance with NAIC policy.

All measures for AIC must be implemented as per the national AIC guidelines while managing all TB patients.

To scale up treatment services PMDT sites have been planned at 1 site per 10 million population implementing AIC measures.
TB infection is the seed bed for developing TB disease and continued transmission. The lifetime risk of reactivation of LTBI in healthy HIV-uninfected individuals is 10%, with 5% developing TB disease during the first 2 to 5 years after infection. The risk of reactivation is greatly increased in the context of immunosuppression, primarily due to HIV infection. ART reduces the risk of TB by approximately two thirds. Child contacts living in TB-affected households are particularly vulnerable populations for progression to TB and severe disease forms such as disseminated and meningeal TB. WHO has included scaling up TB preventive therapy for persons at high risk of developing TB in its End TB Strategy and increasing coverage of contact investigations and TB preventive therapy for PLWHIV and child contacts are important strategies. Scaling up TB preventive therapy is therefore important to meet the goals of ending TB in India.

India, with one-fourth of the global burden of TB, has 40 per cent of the population infected with M.Tb. Treating 40 per cent of the population for LTBI based on Tuberculin Skin Test (TST) positivity or Interferon Gamma Release Assay is neither rational nor practicable, thus emphasizing the need for a focused approach. In clinical situations, the most obvious group for LTBI treatment will include high-risk patients such as those receiving long term corticosteroids, immunosuppressant’s, HIV-infected and juvenile contacts of sputum-positive index cases. The selection of the risk group that will be prioritized for screening and the steps to rule out TB is as follows:

1. Perform household contact investigation for every infectious TB patient
2. Perform CXR for all extra pulmonary TB patients to evaluate for infectiousness
3. Perform reverse contact tracing for the household for every pediatric TB patient
4. Each contact should receive the following evaluation:
   i. TB Symptom screen
   ii. CXR for high risk contacts (children <6, HIV-infected, diabetic, otherwise immunocompromised)

If symptomatic or abnormal CXR, microbiologic evaluation and referral

**Isoniazid Preventive Therapy**

Children under the age of five are more susceptible to TB infection, more likely to develop active TB disease soon after infection, and more likely to develop severe forms of disseminated TB. Children < 5 years of age, who are close contacts of a TB patient, will be evaluated for active TB by a medical officer/pediatrician. After excluding active TB, the child will be given INH preventive therapy irrespective of their BCG or nutritional status. The dose of INH for preventive therapy is 10 mg/kg body weight administered daily for a minimum period of six months and maximum period of nine months. The INH tablets will be collected on monthly basis. The contacts will be closely monitored for TB symptoms and side effects of INH.
Close contacts of infectious patients with proven INH R-TB will be monitored closely for signs and symptoms of active TB as INH cannot be used. Although alternative prophylaxis treatments have been suggested, there is no consensus regarding the choice of the drug(s) and the duration of treatment. Prompt and appropriate treatment of MDR-TB is the most effective way to prevent the spread of infection to others. The following measures will be taken to prevent spread of DR-TB:
1. Early diagnosis and appropriate treatment of MDR-TB cases, and
2. Screening of contacts as per RNTCP guidelines

Further research into effective and non-toxic chemoprophylaxis in areas of high MDR-TB prevalence is required.

**Isoniazid Preventive Therapy (IPT) For PLHIVs**

Children living with HIV who are more than 12 months of age and who are unlikely to have active TB on symptom-based screening, and have had no contact with a TB case will receive six months of IPT (10 mg/kg/ day) as part of a comprehensive package of HIV prevention and care services

**Systematic recording and reporting:**
All events in the cascade of IPT implementation including symptom screening of all contacts, IPT eligibility assessment, investigations, and the compliance with the regimen will be systematically recorded and reported.

**Latent TB infection treatment:**

LTBI is the presence of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in the body without signs and symptoms, or radiographic or bacteriologic evidence of tuberculosis (TB) disease. Studies have demonstrated that Isoniazid (INH) taken for 6 to 9 months in persons with LTBI reduced subsequent TB incidence by 25 to 92 per cent, the differences in effectiveness largely explained by differences in treatment completion. When taken as prescribed the effectiveness of therapy in reducing the risk of progression to active TB ranges between 83 to 93% depending on the duration of treatment (6-9 months).

**Contact screening**

In RNTCP contact screening has been a clinical function with cursory programmatic monitoring. In this NSP contact tracing will be made more rigorous, expansive and accountable. The end result expected is that most TB pts will have their contacts screened, with secondary cases detected and treated.

- All close contacts, especially household contacts, will be screened for TB.
- In case of paediatric TB patients, **reverse contact tracing** for search of an active TB source case in the household must be undertaken.
- Particular attention will be paid to contacts with the highest risk of TB infection

Since transmission can happen from index case to the contact any time (before diagnosis or during treatment) all contacts of TB patients must be evaluated.

Use of Chest X Rays upfront for screening of contacts will be prioritized during the NSP period.

Setting specific screening approaches (for example in prisons, urban slums, etc.) according to the RNTCP TOG will be undertaken.

All close contacts of DR-TB cases will be identified through contact tracing and evaluated for active TB disease as per RNTCP guidelines. If the contact is found to be suffering from pulmonary TB disease irrespective of the smear results, he will be identified as “Presumptive MDR-TB”. The patient

---

**The highest priority contacts for active screening are:**

- Persons with symptoms suggestive of TB
- Children aged < six years
- Contacts with known or suspected immune-compromised patient, particularly HIV infection
- Contacts with Diabetes Mellitus
- Contacts with other higher risks including pregnancy, smokers and alcoholics etc.
- Contacts of patients with DR-TB.
will be initiated on regimen for new or previously treated case based on their history of previous anti-TB treatment. Simultaneously two sputum samples will be transported for culture and DST to a RNTCP-certified C&DST laboratory.
What does it mean in the context of this NSP for TB elimination in India?

Undertake critical management reforms, restructuring of HR and financial norms, pathways for private sector participation, in order to improve efficiency, effectiveness and accountability of the health system for an improved response to the TB epidemic.

What does it entail?

1. Build synergies with existing health service delivery mechanism under Urban Health Mission and plan for integration of services
2. Reform and restructure HR in TB programme to align with the enhanced programme needs for surveillance, participation of private sector and community participation.
3. Strengthen RNTCP’s regulatory capacity to control TB drugs through appropriate laws, regulations, and policies.
4. Position TB high on the health and development agenda of the nation to ensure adequate resources, greater demand for and universal access to TB care services.
CHAPTER 12

URBAN TB CONTROL SYSTEMS

It is often assumed that marginalized people residing in urban areas in general have better access to health services due to their supposed proximity to urban health facilities. However what is often overlooked is the weak public health infrastructure in urban areas and the crowding out effect together with weak referral and outreach system which severely limits access of poor to urban health services in general and TB services in particular. The social exclusion and lack of information and assistance at the secondary and tertiary hospitals makes them unfamiliar to the modern environment of hospitals, thus restricting their access to clinical services.

The key to TB control services in urban areas will be synergy with the existing health service delivery mechanism and proposed mechanism under Urban Health Mission to make optimum use of scare resources and plan for integration of services. TB health care already exists as one of the service delivery indicator in Urban Health Mission and thus the state programme implementation plans (PIPs) when prepared by RNTCP will ensure adequate resourcing for it.

Problem of TB in Urban Area:

The epidemiology of TB in urban area is characterized by, lower prevalence, high transmission and higher incidence. Patients most commonly seek care in private sector, frequent migration and lack of support structures leads to inability of complete treatment leading to drug resistance. High TB burden in urban slums with generally poor health services make urban TB control really challenging.

The strategic interventions for TB control in urban areas during the NSP period include:

1. **Institutional arrangement**: The state will constitute a separate City/Urban TB Control Mission under the State Health Society headed by the administrative head of the city. This will help ensure better coordination with other health and related departments. The City/Urban TB Control Mission will be implemented after developing the city specific annual PIPs for the cities/towns in a state over the NSP period.

2. **Planning**: Planning process in urban areas is complex as there’s a lack of capacity for public health actions in urban local bodies. Most cities are also found lacking in city-specific epidemiological data, inadequate information on the urban poor, illegal clusters, and inadequate information on existing health facilities especially in the private sector. Data collection at the local level, including mapping of slums is therefore necessary to understand the status of urban health and to assess the urban community needs for health care services especially TB. Planning the pathway for diagnosis to completion of treatment will prioritize private providers, laboratories and referral centres for both TB and MDR TB services.

3. **Private sector engagement**: Detailed in Chapter 6 on private sector involvement.

4. **Social Mobilization Campaign**: Urban TB control will involve a strong element of ACSM with specific focus on women, children and youth. Specific material needs to be developed for promotion of involvement of private medical establishments (including laboratories and chemists) in general and private medical practitioners in particular. Another key aspect to be highlighted through ACSM campaign will be the aspect of airborne infection control measures.
RNTCP will explore to promote availability of TB services in private sector as a separate brand certified by RNTCP and adhering to standards of TB control and treatment in India.

5. **Primary Healthcare Services**: The primary place for getting TB services will be the Urban Primary Health Centre (U-PHC) near a slum where a presumptive TB patient will be diagnosed by a Medical Officer at an OPD which should provide needed services (e.g., staying open late to accommodate patients who work).

6. **Referral Services**: Urban Health Mission is in the process of establishing an Urban Community Health Centre (U-CHC) as a satellite hospital for every 4-5 U-PHCs. U-CHC will be utilized for providing specialist services in case of complications for TB patients, providing C&DST services and also for DR-TB services. Patients can also be referred to RNTCP certified laboratories for C&DST services and DR-TB centres in the private sector. Referral linkages will also be established with existing state government hospitals and medical colleges for treatment of complicated cases of TB.

7. **Active case finding in urban slums**: RNTCP will undertake targeted interventions for people living in notified and non-notified slums. Active case finding efforts in urban slums utilizing the services of Female Health worker will be a key intervention. To strengthen the community involvement thrift and saving groups/SHGs/Mahila Arogya Samities (MAS) created at the slum level will be utilized for process of community mobilization for TB services. These groups will be utilized for referral of presumptive TB cases and treatment support by MAS members.

8. **Involvement of partners/NGOs**: The presence of active NGOs in several cities presents a unique and powerful opportunity to extend the reach of health services through various ways of outreach and enhancing utilization of these services by raising community demand for the existing services. The support of the NGOs will be encouraged especially in undertaking situational analysis, identification and mapping of slums, identification and capacity building of link Volunteers and IEC/BCC activities. RNTCP will utilize the services of these NGOs for the following:
   a. Development of context specific IEC material for Urban slum
   b. Training and Capacity building of MAS
   c. Training of ASHA on TB control
   d. Training and capacity Development of Ward level Standing Committee on health under urban local body
   e. Baseline survey and slum mapping
   f. Mapping of health care providers in urban areas
   g. Hiring of NGOs/private providers for U-PHC services
   h. Facilitating involvement of private laboratories and chemists for TB control
   i. Special interventions for vulnerable groups like sex workers, street children, migrant labour, etc.
   j. Innovations in urban TB control
   k. Process documentation

9. **Convergent action with other stakeholders**: RNTCP will utilize the resources and existing schemes from different government departments and ministries for providing quality TB services in urban areas. An example includes utilizing the services of mobile medical units and referral transport scheme of MoHFW for provision of TB services in urban slums and transportation of TB patients to higher referral facilities. Convergence of actions will include planning, mapping, coordinated service delivery, addressing gaps in health and health determinants and joint monitoring. This will include convergence with MoWCD, MoHUPA, MoUD, MoHRD and MoLE. Specific areas of convergence will include the following:
• Under JnNURM at the city level as part of the city development plans, GIS based physical mapping of the slums is being undertaken. The Urban TB Mission for City level planning process will leverage the GIS based mapping wherever completed.
• GIS based physical mapping of the slums and the spatial representation of the socio-economic profile of slums (Slum MIS) is being undertaken under Rajiv Awas Yojana (RAY). This will be utilized for development of city health plans
• The community centers being created under Integrated Housing and Slum Development Programmes (IHSDP) will be used as sites for conducting fixed outreach session
• School Health Programme of Ministry of HRD helps in advocating healthy behavioral practices and imparting awareness about preventive and curative health measures to the school going children. This will be utilized for involving children in TB control activities.
• Information from RSBY of MoLE will be utilized for involving private sector health providers for TB control.
• Information from Ministry of Corporate Affairs will be utilized for using CSR funds for slum development and TB control activities.

10. **IT based Monitoring:** The availability of Information Technology Enabled Services (ITES) in the urban areas makes it a useful tool for effective tracking, monitoring and timely intervention for the urban poor for TB control. RNTCP staff will utilize the handheld devices for uploading data and notification and other services like SMS will be utilized for follow-up of TB patients. Mobile telephony will be used for data gathering and follow ups. This will also involve setting up of a helpline for TB patients to have correct information and facilitate decision making by the patients.

IT based system will also be utilized to facilitate grievance redressal by patients and other stakeholders. A grievance redressal mechanism will be put in place in which a committee, comprising of members from government and reputed community members will be constituted which will help resolve the problems and complaints.

11. **Community Monitoring:** Community based monitoring system will be created with help of civil society partners. Social Audit will be part of the community monitoring process whereby the civil society will facilitate social audit of the services being provided in urban slum.

12. **Research:** Separate fund will be allocated to government Medical Colleges in the urban areas to carry out action research/operational research and special studies on aspects of TB control in urban areas.

**Involvement of Medical colleges in RNTCP**

To widen access and improving the quality of TB services, involvement of medical colleges and their hospitals is of paramount importance. The current mechanism of their involvement through structured task forces at national, zonal and state levels will be continued during the NSP period.

The role of the task forces will continue to be as it is. The main role of the NTF will be to recommend policy suggestion regarding medical colleges’ involvement in the RNTCP and monitor the activities of the ZTF. The ZTF will facilitate the establishment, functioning, and monitoring of State Task Forces (STF), and coordinate between the NTF and STF. The STF will facilitate establishment of DMCs and DOT centres, in all the medical colleges in the respective states.

Scope of activities of medical colleges are going to be expanded with increasing diagnostic and treatment services in newer areas of TB control efforts. This will include following:

a) **Decentralized drug resistant TB services:** DR-TB wards will be expanded to more number of medical colleges to support district level DR-TB treatment services. These DR-TB centres in medical colleges will be useful for management of not only MDR-TB but, for DST-guided treatment, newer regimen use and management of complicated cases of drug resistant TB. Existing staff of medical college i.e. medical officer and TB-HV will be utilized for these DR-TB
wards for coordination with the programme and DTC data entry operator will support e-communications and for MIS operations.

b) **Culture service support:** With follow up of drug sensitive TB patients with culture at the end of treatment and post treatment follow up with culture for all TB patients, additional capacity of laboratories with culture facilities will be needed. To support this strategy, the programme will engage medical colleges to expand its microbiology laboratory for RNTCP. The programme will support identify and support these microbiology laboratories through existing HR and infrastructural norms for culture laboratories.

c) **Air borne infection control measures in health care facilities in districts:** Under the airborne infection control committee of the districts, medical college faculties will be involved to execute AIC measure in all health care settings in the district. The faculties from medical colleges will be trained at the state level and then support in assessment, recommendations and monitoring of AIC implementation in all health facilities in the districts.

d) **Planning, surveillance and quality improvement support to districts:** Faculties of medical colleges will be involved in planning of RNTCP services and subsequent monitoring and evaluation. The department of community medicine will be involved to in monitoring and surveillance of disease including carrying out local surveys. For quality assurance of laboratory services, the department of microbiology will be involved and appropriate capacity enhancement will be done.

e) **Private provider engagement:** Support of medical colleges will be sought for peer education, dissemination of diagnostic and treatment practices and advocacy with professional associations.

f) **Research:** Operational Research mechanisms will be strengthened. Uniform systems of protocol development and capacity building workshop will be implemented. An online system of protocol submission, protocol review, approvals and quick release of funds will be established.

g) **Centers of excellence (COEs):** Select medical colleges will be designated COE for a particular thematic area of the programme on the lines of AIIMS being designated a COE for extra pulmonary TB.
CHAPTER 13
HEALTH SYSTEM STRENGTHENING

Introduction:
Healthcare is one of India’s largest service sectors. Under the Indian constitution, each state has its own healthcare delivery system, enacting and determined on a state level, in which both public and private (for profit as well as non-profit) sectors operate. The health systems in India have evolved based on the geographical dispersion of the population and in context of the specific needs of the rural and urban areas. There are separate programmes catering to the rural areas under the national rural health mission (NRHM) and equivalent urban initiatives are within the purview of national urban health mission (NUHM), both of which were merged in 2013 into the national health mission (NHM). The TB control programme will focus on developing strong linkages with NHM to improve access to TB diagnostic and treatment services. Though in rural areas the tremendous success of the NHM has facilitated the delivery of quality diagnostic and treatment services closer to the community, the urban areas remain a challenge.
The previous NSP (2012-17) envisaged strengthening the health system by developing an integrated approach to TB and leveraging on the existing capacity of the health system to achieve the goal of universal access to TB control services.
The objective and strategies of health system strengthening for TB control in India for the coming years will focus on mechanisms for critical management reforms, restructuring of HR and financial norms, pathways for private sector participation, in order to improve efficiency, effectiveness and accountability of the health system for an improved response to the TB epidemic. With strategies and actions to strengthen the health system, the programme envisages that people and institutions, both public and private, will effectively undertake functions to improve TB outcomes. This will protect people from catastrophic financial loss and impoverishment resulting from TB and ensure patient satisfaction in an equitable, efficient and sustainable manner.

Achievements
The twelfth five-year plan period saw several notable achievements under RNTCP as envisaged in the previous NSP. Supervisory and management units were aligned with the general health system through decentralization of TB units in line with the NRHM blocks with a corresponding increase in STS. Additional dedicated programme staff were provided for RNTCP at state and district levels. The programme developed a new diagnostic algorithm for early diagnosis of TB and using new rapid diagnostic technology as part of the process. DRTB diagnostic systems were scaled-up to provide country-wide coverage. Structured mechanisms were developed for interventions in clinically vulnerable populations like those with comorbid conditions such as TB-Diabetes, TB-Tobacco and TB-HIV. Enablers and incentives were incorporated into the system for improving access to services. RNTCP was also linked to the NHM Public Finance Management System (PFMS) for better streamlining of financial operations with NHM. Various innovative ICT enabled surveillance and treatment adherence systems were either piloted or conceived to support treatment adherence. The NIKSHAY platform was strengthened further with...
incorporation of modules covering new thematic areas and the concept of enhanced NIKSHAY or e-NIKSHAY was introduced.

Patient support systems such as the use of family DOT provider were incorporated in the Revised Technical and Operational Guidelines. The National Strategic Plan 2012-17 also addressed the issue of creating social support systems for patients and families from different stakeholders like local self-governments, NGOs, state welfare schemes etc.

**Challenges**

In spite of the significant achievements, it is realized that the power of existing interventions is not matched by the power of health systems to deliver them to those in greatest need, in a comprehensive way, and on an adequate scale. Although integration between the health systems and RNTCP has been achieved in the provision of services, it is limited in other operational areas such as administration, financial management and monitoring and supervision. This has affected the quality of programme implementation because of the multiple administrative, financial and operational functions to be carried out by field level staff.

**Human resource:** Following decentralization of TB Units (alignment with NHM blocks), recruitment of contractual positions against newly created blocks have been greatly delayed in 12th FYP. Over 20% of the contractual staff positions have been vacant, up to 40% in certain states. Payment of salaries to staff in many states has been delayed due to weak financial management systems. Also, there was little or no scope of opportunities for career progression in the previous HR management system. This poses a challenge to retain skilled staff at various levels.

**Trainings:** The programme periodically requires trainings but the current training systems is not commensurate with the demand. The training programmes need to cover more than 2 million trainees which will require a multi layered cascade system of training. This is a huge task and hence will be optimized for reach and quality by developing e-modules using different types of ICT system.

**Policies:** The indifference of the private sector towards public health actions to control TB and the programmes limited success in engaging the private sector has resulted in under par performance of the programme. The weak enforcement of the notification regulation has contributed to lack of information from the private sector which if not addressed in the current NSP will deny benefits under social schemes to such patients. This is also compounded by the weak implementation of the “Schedule H” drug regulation thereby ensuring ‘over-the-counter’ availability of TB drugs. Moreover the lack of explicit policies to address the social issues adversely affects equity in programme uptake.

**Structure:** The central TB division at the MOHFW, which is the nodal department for TB control in India, is under staffed with four full time senior officers providing leadership to the programme considering the size and scope of the programme. The programme management structure at both the state and district levels continue to burden the programme managers with administrative functions leaving them with little or no time for supervisory and monitoring activities. The states capacity for training and research has remained weak with the STDCs not being able to support the programmatic demands for these activities.

System challenges continue to plague TB control efforts and will require a major shift in the regulatory and legal support to effect changes that will complement and accelerate the efforts to end TB.
Health System Strengthening for TB Control under the new National Strategic Plan:

The overall goal of system strengthening is to provide equitable access to high quality TB care services responsive to the community needs without financial loss thereby protecting the population especially the poor and vulnerable from TB related morbidity, mortality and financial loss.

The efforts for the programme will focus on the traditional five pillars of HSS depicted in the table below. The following chapters explain the NSP related strategic interventions and activities for financing the TB programme, ensuring medical products and technologies, and efficient service delivery.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HSS pillar</th>
<th>Strategies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Human resource (HR) in RNTCP  | Reform and restructure HR in TB programme to align with the enhanced programme needs for surveillance, participation of private sector and the community.  
Conceive and adapt effective ways for strengthening ongoing capacity building and maintenance of skills/competence in programme staff. |
| Governance of RNTCP           | Develop policy support for ending TB in India.  
Develop programme planning expertise, leadership and management capabilities for TB elimination.  
Build civil society/private sector capacity for better advocacy to increase accountability. |
| Health Information            | Create a culture of evidence based decision-making by the use of ICT based applications from grass root level upwards.  
Support integration and improvement in TB information systems, including NIKSHAY for achievement of TB elimination goals. (covered in chapter on treatment and patient support) |
| Medical products and technologies | Strengthen supply chain components to ensure an uninterrupted supply of TB drugs, including creating a supportive environment for a sustainable supply chain.  
Strengthen RNTCP’s regulatory capacity to control TB drugs through appropriate laws, regulations, policies, and standard operating procedures.  
Enhance human and institutional capacity to manage drugs and other logistics management systems and services |
| Service delivery              | Scale up quality, and coordinated delivery of TB care services.  
Develop and implement cost effective essential TB care services.  
Improve the knowledge base on links among incentives, productivity, and quality TB services in the private sector. |
| Financing the TB programme    | Increase public and private domestic resources for TB control services  
Catalyze private sector investment in TB control using public private partnerships. |

**Strategic interventions:**

The selection of the strategies for HSS was informed by RNTCP’s experience and capacity, emerging evidence and innovations, and the need to ensure that health systems are geared to address the significantly enhanced programme needs and accommodate the local epidemiologic situation.

1. **Bold policy initiatives:**
   a. National TB Policy and TB Bill
      All efforts will be made to support a comprehensive TB bill placed in the parliament which will promote TB care as a human rights issue and hasten the control of TB in the country.
The various clauses of the bill will cover all aspects of TB prevention and care to protect, promote and fulfil the rights of persons with TB during delivery of TB care and services and for matters connected therewith or incidental thereto and also to accelerate the response from every sector. Various stakeholders including academia, experts, and political establishments (inter-ministerial consultation) need to be consulted while formulating the bill.

The TB policy will be aligned to the National Health Policy. The necessary regulations under the TB policy, inter-alia, will include:

- Mandatory notification of all TB patients
- Assured access to quality diagnosis and treatment as a standard of care through all healthcare providers
- Regulation of use of diagnostic tests
- Regulation/Ban on sale of anti-TB drugs in open market
- Non stigmatization for TB patients and families etc.
- Right to access to public health care
- Compensations in the event of death, loss of wages, etc.
- Occupational screening, workplace interventions
- Enforcement (Immigration/admission to educational institutions)

**Market Based Regulation** will also be part of the regulatory efforts and will include:

- Certification of C&DST Laboratories
- Establishing linkages with existing health Insurance schemes of the government and at a later date with the Universal Health Coverage (UHC) of the Government.
- Using insurance sector as an additional mechanism to ensure notification
- Regulating access to anti-TB drugs
- Introduction of new anti-TB drugs

2. **National TB Elimination Board**

   It is proposed to create an apex body to facilitate policy development, co-ordinate multi-sectoral involvement and overview the implementation of the strategy to move towards TB elimination. Proposed constituents include Prime Minister as patron, Union Minister Health and Family Welfare as Chairperson and secretaries of related departments, representatives of affected communities, representatives of technical and donor partners, representatives from NGOs etc. as members. The Department of TB elimination (currently Central TB Division) will directly report to National TB Elimination Board (NTEB).

   Similar structure at the state level (State TB Elimination Board) also needs to be created, with state specific changes as required. This structure will provide the highest level of political, administrative, social commitment to TB control at the local level where it is required the most. It shall also be the major medium for addressing issues of health system strengthening. This will enable local epidemiological features of the epidemic, local problems to be identified and local solutions to be implemented. The Board will review performance periodically. This will also enable the multisectoral response required for action on the social determinants of TB and its outcomes.

3. **Re-structure the TB programme management structure (detailed in the organogram below)**

   The New Public Management (NPA) of the 1980s and 1990s sought to redefine the role of the government, from direct service provision alone to include stewardship, oversight and regulation. While NPA’s successes and weaknesses are now better understood in the light of experience, it played a useful role in highlighting the importance of effective management of
both public and private systems. Managing well is now seen as crucial to successful coordination of multiple resources, diverse people, and complex processes, as well as negotiating with stakeholders to achieve desired policy and programme objectives and outcomes.

Central TB Division under the MOHFW has led the TB control and elimination activities in the country since its creation in 1962. The ambitious goals of the current NSP and the commitment of GOI to TB elimination demonstrated in preponing the SDG goal by 5 years, necessitates matching institutional structures to provide the leadership and management support.

i. **Strengthened and empowered CTD:** To provide a multi-stakeholder response for managing TB beyond the public health structure, a new structure is proposed as detailed in the organogram below.

ii. **Thematic Technical Resource Groups (TRG)/Stakeholders Task force:** To review, optimize and make recommendations for implementation of TB control activities in the country under the broad policy framework of the National Strategic Plan for TB control.

iii. **Institutionalization of surveillance and research and HRD:** The existing STDCs, apart from the current role expected of them, will play a bigger role in planning of interventions related to all services including HRD under the programme. The Medical College Task Force mechanism will focus more on the clinical aspects related to TB control and also play a greater role in establishment of research and surveillance mechanisms. Medical colleges will evolve as centres of excellence (CoE) for a particular thematic area like paediatric TB, TB-Diabetes, TB-HIV to name a few, as has been done for extra-pulmonary TB (AIIMS-Delhi being the Centre of Excellence).

iv. **TSUs with a focus on patients beyond the public health sector at National/State level:** Based on success of public provider interphase agencies (INTERPHASE AGENCIES) models in the last NSP period and learnings from NACO, intermediary agencies to bridge and link the various players in TB care will be scaled up. These agencies having the capacity to bring together different players especially the private and public sector and enable operations based on RNTCP guidelines, other acceptable practices or through referrals to the public sector is the cornerstone in programme efforts to engage private providers and reach out to patients being treated in the private sector. This will be mandated to engage with mainly two aspects i.e. (1) the private healthcare sector and (2) line ministries to address the social determinants for TB. In addition, it will take the responsibility of contracting with private players. This organization will be capacitated to generate national / international resources to bridge the funding gap in TB Control and will have a replicable structure at state / district levels.

v. **Knowledge network of Service providers:** In order to improve access to knowledge, a need has been long felt in the country to establish a TB Knowledge Network (TBKN), inter-connecting all knowledge and research institutions in the country through a virtual network. The overarching role of TBKN will be to establish a backbone connectivity which will enable knowledge and information sharing amongst TBKN connected institutes, enabling collaborative research, development and innovation amongst TBKN connected institutes, facilitating advanced distance education in specialized sub-areas of TB, facilitating connection between different sectoral networks in the field of research.

4. **Re-define multi-sectoral approach to address risk factors and mainstreaming TB into other key ministries that include** Finance, Mines, Food and civil supplies, Social justice and empowerment, Tribal welfare, Rural/Urban development, Women and Child Development, and Environment and forest. Inter-ministerial and departmental coordination for providing comprehensive
support for addressing TB is necessary and this includes efficient disbursements, strong policies, effective regulations and strict enforcement.

5. **Human resource (HR) in RNTCP**

Qualified HR is the biggest asset to RNTCP and its becoming more complex and demanding, with multiple new tasks for MDR-TB management and TB-HIV care. An adequately staffed, trained, and motivated health workforce is required to achieve the ambitious TB control objective of ending TB. The goal of RNTCP’s HRD strategy is to optimally utilize available health system staff to deliver quality TB services, and to strengthen the supervisory and managerial capacity of programme staff overseeing these services. RNTCP will align more effectively with health system under NHM to leverage field supervisory staff more effectively, and increase capacity building of the staff to handle multiple tasks of TB care, DR-TB and TB-HIV. The RNTCP has integrated its HRD policy in the NHM HR policy to enable it to function at optimal capacity in the states/districts in an integrated manner with the General health system. The programme has created standardized training modules for each component and customized it for each category of staff. As a consequence, several lakh of health care providers in the general health system have been trained in various initiatives of the RNTCP. TB case finding, treatment, DR-TB, TB-HIV, PPM, and ASCM activities required to achieve universal access need a better approach to human resource development.

The HR plan of RNTCP prefers posting of regular state staff for senior positions in RNTCP for eg. MO STC, MO STDC, etc. In the event of unavailability of such at the state level, the programme will hire staff on a contractual basis. Budgetary provisions have been made for such hiring’s.

Human resource commensurate with the restructured management and leadership structure at the national level calls for increased numbers staff to cover new and expanded thematic areas like surveillance, extensive use of ICT in TB, private sector involvement and others mentioned above. At the state level increased HR requirements are to augment the current capacity and match the creation of 4 divisions at the national level to ensure seamless implantation of the programme. This entails setting up of 4 verticals in the state TB cell with commensurate personnel mimicking the 4 divisions.

A key district level function is to provide close supervisory support to the front line programme and general services staff. Additional pharmacists have been proposed to support supply chain management in line with expansion of drug resistance TB services and introduction of newer drugs and regimen. Counsellor has been proposed for each district DR-TB Centre to meet the counselling needs for TB and DR-TB patients.

At the block level, expansion of Staff has been proposed considering work load of TB patients notified from public sector and private sector and provider management for efficient roll out of programme interventions.

The big ticket changes envisaged in the NSP include the following:

1. **National level:** An additional DGHS (ADGHS-TB) will head the “department of TB elimination” who will be supported by 4 Deputy Director General (DDG) level officer in charge of each division. The divisions cover key programmatic areas (1. Diagnosis and treatment: DSTB and DRTB, 2. Surveillance, M&E, research and HRD, 3. Finance and PSM, 4. Partnerships, ACSM and PSS) with commensurate increase in staff strength including technical and operations staff. Each DDG will be supported by 2 ADDG and 2 DADG, Senior Technical officers, junior technical officers, data analyst and secretarial assistants.
2. **State Level**: Creation of 4 units within the state TB cell to mimic the divisional structure at the national level to ensure efficient communication and enhanced accountability for implementation and service delivery. A similar structure in the major metros can also be created on a need basis.

3. **District level**: At the district level pharmacists have been proposed to be provided from the Programme at selected districts with high work load, and Counsellor has been proposed for every district DR-TB Centre.
4. **Block level:** Supervisory staff will be increased based on workload of patient and provider management.

The proposed HR restructuring during the NSP period will ensure increased provider coverage by 10 times and patient coverage by 2.5 times.

**Proposed institutional structure for TB elimination in India is depicted below.**

*Position of DDG to be upgraded to Addl. DGHS (HAG level) from public health cadre*
Trainings

The proposed institutional stricture also entails increased volumes and quality of trainings. Newer and modern methods of learnings are proposed in the NSP. During the programme expansion in the last five years, RNTCP has developed and updated training materials for new initiatives based on need to reflect revised policies and recommended practices. RNTCP has traditionally adapted the cascading methodology to train its staff, with national institutes and NRLs being involved as centres for training the trainers (STO, STDC Staff, IRL Staff, DTO, Medical College faculty and STC MO-RNTCP, etc.) on various components of the programme. The STDCs play a major role in imparting state level RNTCP trainings. The block level MOs are presently being trained at the STDCs who are entrusted with the responsibility of training the Medical Officers at district level. The supervisory staff (STS, STLS) are also trained at state level who go on to train Treatment supporters and lab technicians, respectively, at the district level.

Challenges with trainings

Several new components like daily regimen, PMDT, TB-HIV and other co-morbidities, paediatric TB, Nikshay, notification, pharmacovigilance, partnerships, etc. have been added to RNTCP in its course of evolution. Moreover, with the alignment of TB Units with NHM blocks has resulted in an increase in number of human resource under RNTCP.

Strategy

The key strategy is to move towards an e-learning mode utilizing the web based and mobile based learning experiences. The programme will be transitioning from conventional stand-alone modular training methodologies to newer composite tools which enable self-learning.

- The training tools will be designed in a way that they can be administered as per specific need and level of use. These can be taken by the participant at his or her own pace.
- The National TB Institute, Bengaluru shall be playing a pivotal role in facilitating this transition and authoring and testing these e-learning tools.
- The STDCs will act as resource centres for translating the content to vernacular and adding relevant content as per local needs at the state level.
- The STDCs will also continue to act as centres for final certification of successful completion of training by interacting with the participants after culmination of e-learning and administering a post-test questionnaire, if needed.

These steps will not only help in rapidly filling the gap of untrained staff but will also prove to be an effective and sustainable way to keep-up with changing policy guidelines and percolating correct knowledge to every level of staff.

Addressing social determinants of TB

The current NSP recognizes the critical role of addressing the social determinants of TB in order to achieve its ambitious goals. Social determinants are a cross cutting issue and has been dealt with in the chapter on case finding, treatment, patient support system and HSS. This includes nutritional support to TB patients and families, financial incentives to patients and providers, health system strengthening, and linking patients with existing social and financial support systems of the government. Addressing poverty, malnutrition, urbanization, indoor air pollution, etc. require inter departmental/ministerial coordinated activities and the programme will proactively facilitate this coordination. For example extending subsidized LPG gas connections to BPL households and TB affected community is expected to reduce indoor air pollution in these high risk groups. Programme will make active efforts to establish linkage with such services. These interventions at population level are expected to have additional impact on accelerating decline in incidence. To address gender and other equity issues, special efforts by engaging concerned departments and agencies will be prioritized.
Gender-Responsive Approach to TB

TB affects an estimated three million women every year and remains among the top five leading causes of death among adult women globally. Despite this, inadequate attention has been paid to the gendered nature and impact of the disease.

Challenges
- While the well-recognized lower status of women and girls in society at large can contribute to bottlenecks in seeking and completing treatment, men can face challenges from lifestyle factors like smoking or alcohol consumption. TB can lead to complications during pregnancy and childbirth as well. A gendered analysis can yield more information on these factors.
- Higher obstetric morbidity among pregnant women with TB, higher risk of miscarriage, prematurity, low birth weight and other complications. Genital TB contributes to infertility with persisting and far-reaching consequences in the family and society.
- Gender inequities within a family and its consequences for access to treatment.
- Loss of income for men and women due to work-days lost, greater absenteeism and lower productivity in paid work.
- Women’s proximity to biomass fuel and indoor cooking, which are known risk factors for TB and their functioning as primary caregivers for anyone with an illness in the family
- The impact of reduced access to nutrition for women and increased prevalence of malnutrition, which can impact treatment outcomes.
- Higher stigma for women, contributing to greater discrimination, lowering the likelihood of seeking diagnosis and treatment.
- Isolation, for both men and women, but severity of the consequences is greater for women – divorce or abandonment, lower likelihood of marriage if single, harassment by husband’s family where the female is expected to relocate upon marriage.

Strategic Interventions
A gender-responsive approach to TB can identify and counter the influence of gender on the causes and consequences of TB, as experienced by men, women and transgender. The RNTCP, in consultation with various stakeholders, will develop relevant gender guidance for TB. This will include but will not be limited to the following:
- Developing and implementing a framework for ensuring gender-sensitive and gender-responsive approaches to TB
- Utilizing existing tools to undertake a gender analysis of the RNTCP to identify opportunities, including a mechanism to gather and analyze gender-disaggregated data
- Identifying research needs on TB & gender and building evidence to inform the development of a gender-responsive strategy.
- Strengthen the gender capacity of providers within the RNTCP by developing training tools to ensure that services and service providers are gender-responsive.
- Ensuring that ACSM campaigns are gender-responsive and developing gender-specific messaging as part of the communication strategy to promote behavior change in men and women. This will include strategies to address issues around access, stigma, provider responses to women, nutrition as well as smoking and alcoholism among men.
- Encouraging state/field-level innovative implementations of gender-responsive programming and scaling up of select models. Potential examples include the involvement of women in active case-finding and contact screening efforts; the engagement of FOGSI and other relevant provider groups on new tools available for TB and improving a focus on pregnant women in RNTCP; promoting behavior change in the usage of fuel in households or implementation of women and community-led nutrition programmes that can have a positive impact on TB-related outcomes.
- Fostering strategic partnerships with between TB, HIV, maternal health, reproductive health, child health and mental health programmes through an integrated approach at the primary care level.
CHAPTER 14
ADVOCACY, COMMUNICATION AND SOCIAL MOBILIZATION

Introduction
Since the inception of the programme, advocacy and communication initiatives in RNTCP are seen to generate demand leading to earlier diagnosis and correct treatment. It creates positive behaviour change amongst patients, influences decision-makers, and engages and empowers communities to change. It is an important component of the TB control strategy to ensure long-term and sustained impact.

ACSM is a cross cutting, supportive strategy that focuses on all aspects of TB care for ensuring quality in diagnosis and treatment interventions, strengthening social support systems for TB care and community interventions to reduce stigma. ACSM activities in the current NSP will focus on improvement in early identification of symptoms of TB and referrals from community aiding in early case detection, support for treatment adherence; combating stigma and discrimination; people’s empowerment; mobilizing political commitment and capacity building for decentralized planning.

Achievement
1. The last NSP period saw a significant movement on the ACSM front with a high visibility media campaign involving Amitabh Bacchan, India’s biggest film star and an ex-TB patient, as the TB brand ambassador. This has made a big impact on conveying the threat of TB to the public at large.
2. Call to Action for a TB-Free India brought all the key stakeholders together on a high visibility “call to action summit” in March 2016. Wide participation of various stakeholders in TB, especially private health sector, corporate sector, civil society, media, academia and the community committed to the ambitious goals of the End TB strategy. TB Champions from

Although distinct from one another, advocacy, communication and social mobilization (ACSM) are most effective when used together.
1. Advocacy seeks to ensure that there is strong commitment for TB control.
   a. Policy advocacy informs politicians and administrators how an issue will affect the country and outlines actions to take to improve laws and policies
   b. Programme advocacy targets opinion leaders at the community level on the need for local action
   c. Media advocacy validates the relevance of the subject, puts issues on the public agenda, and encourages the media to cover TB-related topics regularly and in a responsible manner so as to raise awareness of problems and possible solutions.
2. Communication aims to favourably change knowledge, attitudes, behaviours, and practices among various groups of people.
3. Social mobilization brings together community members and other stakeholders to strengthen community participation for sustainability and self-reliance.
amongst patients, technical experts, political representatives, public figures, sportsperson, and celebrities added their voice to increase visibility and action on TB.

3. Substantial efforts have been made towards capacity building of programme managers, state IEC officers and communication facilitators in ACSM with dedicated national, regional and state level ACSM trainings and workshops. National ACSM TOT was completed to facilitate the drawing up of ACSM plans at the state level and also reinvigorate the efforts country wide.

4. Establishment of the state ACSM quality support group is completed in all the states. This group has representation from staff with core competencies in capacity building and institutional strengthening, community advocacy and events, mass media production and distribution as well as monitoring and evaluation and has enhanced the ACSM functions in the states. However monitoring and evaluation remains a weak link.

5. Parliamentary forum for TB

Challenges

1. There has been a lack of involvement in TB ACSM by general health staff dealing with ACSM which is a prime reason for non-alignment with general IEC structure in the health system. Peripheral health staff who deal with all programmes at field level tends to give less attention to TB ACSM due to priority issues. Although coverage by the auxiliary health workers, mainly the female health workers, Anganwadi workers (AWW) and Accredited Social Health Activists (ASHA) is considerable, their involvement in TB ACSM is relatively limited as a result of competing priorities such as maternal and child health, nutrition, malaria and other social issues.

2. Even at the higher levels, there is a lack of coordination between the TB ACSM and IEC management to establish a cohesive and integrated management structure to coordinate programme activities.

3. Coordination with stakeholders to develop formative, evaluative, impact and outcome research methods and tools in ACSM has not progressed. ACSM M&E remains the weak link in ACSM functions of the programme.

Key ACSM priorities:

1. GOI should declare TB as a public health emergency and combat it in a campaign mode

2. Increase budgetary provisions (it is presently only 3%) and launch a National TB Campaign engaging ambassadors at regional level to increase visibility

3. Rebrand RNTCP (name/logo/slogan)

4. Engage diverse stakeholders esp. elected representatives, civil society and establish inter-sectoral coordination

5. Empower and engage TB community - Patient reported score cards on TB Care services; establish a mechanism for real time feedback from civil society and community monitoring groups to key health officials and participation in planning

6. The designated / trained spokesperson of the program should routinely and openly share information about TB with the media

7. Develop and institutionalize a patient mentorship program through identifying, training, hand holding patients to be patient advocates

Strategic interventions

1. Advocacy for administrative and political commitment, and to keep TB control high on health and development agenda and increase the budgetary provisions which currently is 3% of the programme outlay.

2. Political, media and programme advocacy to get the GOI to declare TB as a public health emergency.

3. High visibility, high decibel communication for demand generation and stigma reduction

4. Audience segmentation, targeted behaviour-change interventions and community mobilization for increase demand and accountability of service providers.

5. Community ownership and mobilization for case finding and support of TB patients.

6. Facilitate meaningful and sustained collaboration amongst partners.
Activities

To significantly reduce TB burden by 2020 in India, intensified case finding will be one of the most important interventions. National “sweep out TB” / “TB Mukt Bharat” campaigns, which are massive, repetitive, intensive and persuasive, for case-finding and community commitment from the panchayat, districts and states, will become centre-stage in the programme. A major component of this campaign is strategic ACSM. It will have 3 separate components advocacy, communication and community engagement.

1. Advocacy
   - Engage diverse stakeholders specifically political and administrative (at national, state, district, panchayat). A priority advocacy theme with central council of health will include stable tenure of state and district programme officers.
   - Empower TB community (affected community, cured patients, caretakers ) to speak up/voice their concerns (through treatment literacy)
   - Ensure civil society partnerships from groups such as Rotary, faith based organizations
   - Engage with the media (print, TV, radio, digital)
   - Establish Inter-sectoral coordination – amongst different ministries

2. Media Advocacy
   - Designate and train media spokespersons at national/state/district levels in the programme
   - Routinely and openly share information about TB with the media
   - Engage academia / subject experts to share scientific research publications with the media
   - Sensitize media and programme staff about language so as to avoid stigmatizing
   - Design effective online and social media strategies for TB to engage with the public (FB/Twitter handle for programme)

3. Communications
   As a first step towards the goal of universalizing access to quality TB care, a pan-India communication campaign will be launched. This campaign will be used to create awareness about
   TB symptoms, the urgent need for presumptive TB cases to visit a nearby public or certified private TB diagnostic facility, and the need for timely TB diagnostic and treatment services available free of charge to all TB patients seeking care in the private sector. Communication campaigns will also focus on clinically vulnerable populations such as people living with HIV, household contacts of TB cases, malnourished children, diabetics and tobacco users. This widespread awareness about TB and free services will therefore target the ‘missing’ TB cases in the country. The specific activities will include:
   - Launch and sustain National TB Campaign over next 5 years
   - Engage ambassadors (celebrities/ influencers etc.) at regional level to increase visibility
   - Empower patient advocates and give them necessary platforms (to speak/write/share)
   - Design a campaign to combat stigma/myths
   - Expand Helpline (patients/providers) to all states, mobile campaign( SMS/Voice SMS)
   - Assess, revise and disseminate patient education literature
   - Simplify messages so they are understood by the community – avoid programme/ medical jargon eg. DMC/ ICTC/TU/rapid molecular tests, etc.
   - Focus on prevention (cough hygiene/etiquette)
   - Do not just focus on pulmonary TB – give equal importance to extra pulmonary, pediatric and Tb in women when designing communication
   - Greater thrust on-ground activities such as street plays, video van, group meetings, outdoor communications in high risk areas/vulnerable populations
• Apart from World TB Day, TB messaging should be incorporated into other significant platforms (e.g. World AIDS Day, World Diabetes Day, etc.)

4. Community engagement
• TB patients must not be seen as passive recipients of care. A human rights based approach to patient care must be adopted
• Patient reported score cards on TB Care services will enhance accountability of TB services. Ultimately it is expected to enhance the quality of services.
• To evaluate gaps/ effectiveness of programme interventions, a mechanism of civil society/key stakeholder feedback will be devised.
• Patient/community networks (such as HIV Positive network/ Caretakers) should be created with key stakeholders at all stages of planning, decision making, implementation and monitoring
• Establish peer group support and family support at the community level and make them part of long term sustainable solutions
• Formulate Community Monitoring Groups which will include PRIs, community leaders, religious leaders, cured TB patients, family members of affected TB patients etc.
• Develop and Institutionalize a patient mentorship programme through identifying, training, supporting patients to be patient advocates

5. Planning WTB Day
• Each state to take a different theme as per state data/ requirement during each WTBD
• Planning has to be realistic to augment the limited resources
  o Disseminate patients charter at the Community level

6. M&E of ACSM activities
   For long, ACSM M&E has been a neglected function. It is proposed to undertake evaluation of implementation status of the activities which will include:
   1. Impact assessment of ACSM activities- baseline, interim and post NSP period to draft further policies
   2. Rapid assessment in 2017 to identify bottlenecks and plan ahead
   3. Outcome and impact evaluation of ACSM activities at the end of the plan period will be undertaken.

Documentation will support the dissemination of successful interventions in the programme and will consist of publishing quarterly booklets on the ACSM activities.
CHAPTER 15
SURVEILLANCE, MONITORING AND EVALUATION

Introduction

Transitioning of the ways of working in the TB programme over the next NSP period will require a stringent monitoring of programme interventions especially related to the quality of interventions. This necessitates adherence to the full M&E cycle with follow ups, mentoring and supportive supervision as the key.

Well-performed surveillance is an instrument for informing healthcare workers, public health experts and decision makers in order to guide and prioritize their action. It is a basic component in the control and elimination of TB and provides information on the epidemiology of the disease, the evolution of trends and the description of those groups in the population at increased risk of TB and unfavorable prognosis. It is an essential element in monitoring the effectiveness of interventions aimed at elimination of the disease.

A good TB surveillance system will require timely notification of all TB cases in the population and will be able to capture necessary variables for demographic, clinical, socio-economic, geographic, spatial characteristics to enable better understanding of the local epidemiology and trend of TB.

TB surveillance will include data from laboratories as they play a pivotal role in TB diagnostics and case ascertainment; this will help to ensure completeness of reporting. Surveillance of TB will address the current challenges of the disease. In that sense, surveillance of drug resistance and treatment outcome monitoring are essential tools for the evaluation of TB control. Reliable case-based notification systems are vital for a good surveillance system. Surveillance will also be enhanced for vulnerable groups.

Achievements:

- National Case Based web-based surveillance system (Nikshay) has been developed and deployed across the country with more than 7 million TB patients registered including 7 lakh cases notified by private sector since 2012.
- Transition to registration at diagnosis is in process with amendment in recording and reporting system as per technical and operational guidelines and will be completed by December 2016. This will bring accountability for more than 1,00,000 smear positive TB patients which were previously being diagnosed but not treated under RNTCP annually for more than a decade
- National DRS survey has been conducted and final results are awaited in March 2017
- Interim revision of estimation of TB burden proposed by WHO, Geneva and approved by Government of India is more realistic for measuring progress towards achieving sustainable Development Goals regarding ending TB epidemic. The re-estimated TB incidence including HIV-TB is 2.8 million (217 per 1,00,000) and mortality excluding HIV-TB is 4.8 lakh (36 per
These results are interim and pending results of planned national TB prevalence survey in 2017-18.

Challenges:

- Streamlining of OR review and funding process especially due to lack of National Research Cell
- Underfunding of Nikshay & Manpower shortage
- Delay in procurement of tablets and establishment of call center under e-Nikshay
- Use of case based surveillance system for programme planning

Strategies

1. Establish TB surveillance system at district, state and national level to monitor the epidemiological characteristics of TB in the population over time and geography.
2. Monitor the performance of TB control activities and use this data to inform appropriate interventions to upgrade the districts, state and national TB plans.
3. Identify and describe vulnerable populations at increased risk of TB and unfavorable outcomes to which targeted public health activities will be addressed.

Strategic interventions and activities

1. Case Based Routine Surveillance
   a. An ICT supported systems to rapidly receive and transmit data up-down with GIS mapping of every patient to identify hot spots will be crucial for a quick and adequate response. It will capture information on household income, high risk occupation if any, residential status- native/migrant/temporary worker/visitor, and co-morbidities. It will also capture systematic screening of close contacts and contacts in the neighborhood: number of contacts eligible and screened for every case.
   b. Strategies to monitor adherence will include proven projects like 99 DOTS, MERM, etc. and also automated dose reminders, prompts for timely actions, etc.
   c. Geo mapping of areas with high risk for TB and those with poor treatment outcomes will also be a part of the routine surveillance.
   d. Provisioning of enablers and incentives through e-transfers, linkage with social welfare schemes, and nutrition support will also be captured.
   e. ADR monitoring and death audit in TB patients too will form the part of the case based routine surveillance.

2. Evaluate the epidemiological characteristics of TB
   a. Strengthen nationwide surveillance systems and other sources of data collection, and reinforce the use of standard reporting and definitions including DR TB cases in order to gather reliable data that are comparable within and between states, and internationally over time.
   b. Develop the use of enhanced laboratory techniques such as DNA fingerprinting and molecular typing to evaluate the spread of DR TB cases and identify outbreaks.
   c. Integrate laboratory, clinical and epidemiological data on TB cases, at district, state and national levels.
   d. Create algorithms for the detection of local outbreaks and clusters.

3. Monitor TB control activities
   a. Expand drug-resistance surveillance activities to monitor and improve case management.
b. Collect data on TB cases with laboratory information on co-morbidity status to improve care and integrated management of TB/HIV co-infected patients, TB/DM patients, etc.
c. Enhance the collection of information on case notification, monitoring treatment adherence, social support and treatment outcomes at all levels in order to monitor and improve patient management.
d. Spatial mapping of areas with high TB burden as well as areas with poor treatment outcome

4. **Identify and describe vulnerable populations for TB**
   a. Analyze routine surveillance data and perform ad hoc surveys to identify vulnerable populations.
   b. Enhance or implement TB surveillance in migrants, prisoners and other vulnerable populations according to the particular situation in the district/state.

5. **Establish TB Surveillance system from district to national levels**
   a. Establish TB Surveillance units at district level in DTC, at state level in STDC and national level at NTI
   b. Establish sentinel surveillance units at medical colleges
   c. Establish laboratory surveillance units at all IRLs and NRLs
   d. Use e-NIKSHAY as the major data source with analytical outputs readily available at all levels

6. **Burden estimation:**
   a. National TB Prevalence Survey planned to be implemented in 2017-2018
   b. Mathematical modelling to be continued under GBD India on periodic basis
   c. Regular programmatic survey conducted by programme staff for district level estimation of disease burden

7. **Monitoring:**
   a. Monthly review of national institutes, NRLs, STOs, STDCs, IRLs, DRTC at national level and DTOs at state level for monitoring as well as capacity building, using video conferencing in addition to biannual review meetings

8. **Evaluation:**
   a. Central and state internal evaluation to be continued with updated methodology to include all type of patients as per TOG
   b. External evaluation / social audit of at least 4,000 patients eligible for incentives
   c. Death audit of at least 10% of deaths reported by programme
   d. Evaluation conducted by donors will be conducted at a fixed frequency and in synchronization with all stakeholders/programme

**Laboratory surveillance**

Initiate sentinel surveillance as per the “building and strengthening surveillance plan” and further scale up to continuous surveillance. Establish laboratory surveillance in the country with National TB Institute Bangalore as the nodal institute for building capacity of sentinel surveillance sites at laboratories in public and private sector.

**Healthcare worker surveillance for TB**

Successful AIC implementation is important in preventing HCWs from becoming infected with drug-susceptible and DR TB, and thus preventing occupationally acquired TB disease. Screening of HCWs at high risk of TB is likely to reduce transmission and with earlier diagnosis and treatment, prevent serious illness and disability. Screening of HCWs for TB is a high priority of the programme. Necessary guidelines are already available and implemented during this NSP period.
All HCW are classified as part of key affected populations due to their higher risk of acquiring TB and those who are symptomatic or/and with any signs of TB or chest X Ray abnormality will be offered an upfront rapid molecular testing upfront to rule in or rule out TB at the first instance and during periodic screening also. Necessary health insurance schemes will be made available to the HCWs as per the State government policy.

**Surveillance of Airborne Infection Control (AIC)**

a. Map and categorize high transmission settings: health facilities, congregate settings, workplace, public places-schools, colleges  
b. Monitoring AIC as per the national guideline.

**Migrant Surveillance**

a. Strengthen existing mechanism of registration of TB patients  
b. Enlist migrant camps and locations  
c. Capture data on systematic screening in such risk groups  
d. Ensure continuity of treatment

**Surveillance of quality of TB care using audits**

1. Prescription Audit  
2. Data audit  
3. Financial audit  
4. Standardized patients’ studies  
5. Patient feedback survey

**National TB Surveillance system structure**
CHAPTER 16
RESEARCH

The development and implementation of the National TB Control Programme is based on global scientific and operational guidelines and evidence. As new evidence became available, RNTCP made necessary changes in its policies and programme management practices. In addition, with the changing global scenario, RNTCP is incorporating newer and more comprehensive approaches to TB control. To generate the evidence needed to guide policy makers and programme managers, the programme implemented measures to encourage operational research (OR).

The programme requires additional knowledge and evidence of the effectiveness of interventions aimed at TB care and management and a more proactive approach to promoting OR to optimize policies, improve service quality and increase operational efficiency. Furthermore, the programme seeks to better leverage the enormous technical expertise and resources existing within India both within the Programme, and across the many medical colleges, institutions and agencies.

Operational research aims to improve the quality, effectiveness, efficiency and accessibility (coverage) of the control efforts. To promote and support OR, a Research Cell has been constituted at CTD to Coordinate the National Standing Committee on Operational Research comprising of 14 individual and institutional members. This Committee mainly provides technical guidance to CTD on OR and expertise to identify OR priority areas for commissioned research. Apart from it there are zonal and state operational research committees which identify priority areas for research as relevant to their zone/state, based on the national research agenda. To facilitate OR in programme areas the National Standing Committee on Operational Research will be relocated at NTI.

The evaluation and adoption of new TB diagnostics (e.g. GeneXpert) and new drugs (e.g. bedaquiline and delamanid) in India has been slow for want of clear directives and a framework at the central level for product validation and policy. This limits the benefits of new TB technologies to reach patients who need them the most. In this context, there is a great scope for national TB institutes (e.g. National Tuberculosis Institute, National Institute for Research in TB, National Institute of Tuberculosis and Respiratory Diseases, and National Jalm Institute of Leprosy and other Mycobacterial Diseases) to play a key role as product evaluators who can conduct multi-centric evaluation studies, and generate high quality evidence for policy making. These national TB institutes have a long and rich tradition of evaluating technologies (e.g. BCG) and strategies (e.g. daily versus intermittent drug regimens) in the past, and are well placed to take on this task. A clear framework for evaluation and endorsement of new TB tools will be helpful, for product developers as well as implementers.

The scientific agenda, developed by the CTD and partners, articulates opportunities to understand RNTCP weaknesses, develop solutions, and refine policies to better achieve the programme objectives. The RNTCP will continue to promote and support research on issues which are of key relevance to guide interventions and to monitor and evaluate the impact of the programme through collaboration with specialized institutions.

Activities:

- Implementation research for demonstration of resource optimization for implementation of newer diagnostic algorithms
- Conduct implementation research for feasibility of active case finding among key populations
• Conduct operational research to determine the feasibility of chemoprophylaxis / preventive therapy in different risk groups (contacts of TB / DR-TB, etc.)
• Initiate testing / evaluation of at least 3 new diagnostic/prognostic tests (preferably of Indian origin) for diagnosis of TB, DR-TB & latent TB
• Initiate pilot of at least 3 novel regimens for drug-sensitive and drug-resistant TB in through implementation research for those already piloted elsewhere and through clinical trials for completely novel regimens.
• Initiate testing of at least 1 candidate vaccine in Indian population
• Initiate at least one large scale genetic susceptibility study, preferably from the same sample of that of TB prevalence survey
• Initiate a TB elimination project through implementation research in at least 3 districts in the country
• Perform feasibility studies for uptake of new tools including replacement of smear microscopy with molecular diagnostic methods at the Microscopy level
• Strengthen Operational research through an institutional mechanism at NTI
• Perform Operations Research for feasibility of introduction and scale up of IGRA
• Perform operational research on TB/DM to determine best treatment strategies, regimens and durations.
• Build capacity for tuberculin production/identify new tuberculin or sub-unit Antigen for TST

Research consortium: The Indian Council of Medical Research (ICMR) has launched India TB Research and Development Corporation (ITRDC) in 2016 to bring together all major national and international stakeholders to develop new tools (drug, diagnostics and vaccines) for TB. The NSP has ensured a tight alignment with the ITRDC research plans and embraced the research consortium activities which include the following.
• Forge partnerships, build capacity of PSUs to manufacture diagnostic tests, anti-TB drugs and products including vaccines. This will also include building capacity for tuberculin production/identification new tuberculin or sub-unit Antigen for TST.
• Invest and fund at least,
  • 3 incubators with potential to develop low cost, indigenous, Point-Of-Care (POC) diagnostic test
  • 3-5 incubators with potential candidate molecules with anti-TB properties in phase I or II trial
  • 3-4 incubators with potential vaccine candidates for development in phase I or II trial
  • To have at least 1 each of the above final market product co-owned by Government of India by 2025.
India has made bold commitments for TB (TB) elimination, reflected in this National Strategic Plan (NSP) for Tuberculosis Control (2017–2025) and the international commitments under End TB Strategy and U.N. Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). Delivering on these ambitious objectives requires heightened technical assistance (TA) that has supported the country’s RNTCP. The World Health Organization Country Office for India (WCO-India) has been, since the year 1999, providing TA to RNTCP through its Technical Support Network (TSN), which comprises consultants who work in coordination with the central and state governments in India to strengthen RNTCP activities through technical support in planning, training, surveillance, monitoring and evaluation.

An evaluation of WHO’s TA to RNTCP was undertaken to provide an independent assessment of the performance of WHO-RNTCP TSN and to assess the need and scale for TA from WHO-RNTCP TSN to support TB control activities in India. The most important finding of the assessment pertains to the crucial role the WHO-RNTCP TSN plays in the planning, implementation, and monitoring of RNTCP—right from the national level through to the programme activities in the field. The network’s consultants in the field have been successful in meeting the various TA needs required for implementation of the strategy to identify and cure persons with TB and in monitoring and evaluation of programme performance. Over the years, the TA provided by TSN consultants has evolved from facilitating TB case detection and treatment under RNTCP to addressing more ambitious targets outlined in NSP (2012–2017) and supporting the implementation of recent global advances in TB diagnosis and care, which include, among others, adoption of rapid TB diagnosis through rapid molecular tests and evidence-based policy revisions to move to the daily anti-tubercular treatment (ATT) regime, drug resistant TB management, private sector engagement etc.

**Need and scale of TA required:**

Considering the ambitious targets and large number of new activities envisaged in the NSP, the technical assistance need to continue and scaled up. Areas requiring high end TA include private sector engagement, drug resistant TB management and establishing TB surveillance system. The present WHO-RNTCP-TSN will be focusing more on these areas. The programme in addition will be hiring technical consultants as regional consultants and over the next 3 years to support programme implementation activities. This dual technical support will be necessary for the next 5 years, then the whole technical assistance can be transitioned to the regional consultants hired by programme. Translating the ambitious vision of a TB-free India into reality demands scaled-up technical assistance (TA) support, adding new skill sets, improving the capacity to address the rapidly changing landscape, and adapting to address local epidemiologic drivers. The technical support network (TSN) working in coordination with the central and state governments in India, supports the central, state, and local governments in RNTCP activities. The technical consultants are based at the CTD and in the states to provide TA to central, state, and district programme management units. The TA will be considered an integral part of the technical support provided to the RNTCP through the ongoing partnership with various development partners especially at a time when the global community must support India’s efforts to end TB.
What does it mean in the context of this NSP for TB elimination in India?
Provide adequate resources—financial, human resources and an enabling ecosystem to implement the strategies and activities mentioned in the NSP.

What does it entail?
1. Provide uninterrupted supply of good quality diagnostics and anti TB drugs for early diagnosis and treatment of every TB patient under RNTCP.
2. Strengthen RNTCP’s regulatory capacity to control TB drugs through appropriate laws, regulations, and policies.
3. Catalyze private sector investment in TB control using public private partnerships.
CHAPTER 18
PROCUREMENT AND SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

Introduction

Continuous and smooth supply of good quality assured Anti TB Drugs and all related commodities is an essential activity under RNTCP. The procurement of Anti TB drugs, equipment and diagnostics is planned, coordinated and done centrally on an annual basis through a well-defined procurement mechanism. The financial support for procurement is provided by Domestic Budgetary Source (DBS), World Bank and The Global Fund. While procurement of consumables is decentralized to the states, drugs may be procured by states in emergency situations after proper authorization from CTD.

The procurement of anti TB Drugs (first and second Line) under DBS and World Bank mechanism is done through a procurement agency selected by Ministry of Health and Family Welfare (MoHFW). M/s Central Medical Services Society (CMSS), an independent and autonomous body under MoHFW. Procurement under Global Fund mechanism is done through the Global Drug Facility (GDF) of the Stop TB Partnership housed and administered by the United Nations Office for Project Services (UNOPS) and the International Dispensary Association (IDA). The authorized procurement agent is responsible for ensuring all bidding procedures under the International Competitive Bidding (ICB) and supply of anti TB drugs to the consignees happens in a timely manner. These Procurement Agents also ensure that drugs procured are in compliance with the quality policy of the RNTCP, WB and TGF. The procurement, supply chain and logistics activities at the central level are administered by Additional Deputy Director General (TB) with support from consultants and a supply chain management and logistics agency contracted by the programme.

Several initiatives have been taken in the period of last NSP to enable uninterrupted supply of good quality diagnostics and anti TB drugs to all TB patients. 2500 LED microscopes were procured, along with 500 CBNAAT machines and 7.8 lakhs cartridges to expand the reach of quality diagnostics across the country and strengthen district level diagnostic capacities. The programme also plans to procure additional CBNAAT machines to have at least one rapid molecular test machine installed in all 735 implementing units of the country.

In addition to first and second line drugs, newer formulations like daily regimen for adults and pediatrics and bedaquiline were also successfully procured in the last NSP period. More advanced tools for logistics and supply chain management were leveraged at the central and state level to ensure streamlined supply of drugs and avoid stock out situations.

The current NSP will take the work forward through introduction of newer ICT solutions and further strengthening of HR structures and capacity building at all levels. The programme plans to implement a logistics and supply chain management solution to enable real time visibility into stock status at all levels and enable forecasting and quantification for TB drugs and diagnostics. Being implemented through Centre for Development of Advanced Computing (C-DAC), the software is expected to be operational in 2017.
Achievements
1) **LED Microscopes**: 2500 LED microscopes were procured and installed at various designated microscopy centers to provide more accurate and faster diagnostic equipments for management of drug sensitive TB
2) **CBNAAT**: 500 CB-NAAT machines and over two million cartridges were procured to strengthen diagnostic capacity and enable scale up of rifampicin sensitivity testing. There are plans to procure around 1.2 million cartridges in 2017.
3) **Daily Regimen**: Daily regimen was procured and supplied to field level for treatment of drug sensitive TB in adult and paediatric patients in the five states covered under phase one implementation along with all ART sites in the country for TB treatment in PLHIV. Trainings of state and field level staff were conducted to ensure proper logistics and supply chain management of fixed drug combinations at state and district drug stores.
4) **Bedaquiline (BDQ)**: Bedaquiline, a new class of drug for treatment of DR TB was procured in a timely manner for roll out in six selected RNTCP sites under a Conditional Access Programme (CAP) covering 6 sites in 5 states.
5) **Training on Procurement and Supply Chain Management**: Several capacity building initiatives were taken to enable new drugs, diagnostics and regimens introduction and train the staff on corresponding supply chain and logistics practices for stock management and transportation.
6) **Quality assurance of anti TB drugs**: While all anti TB drugs procured are required to meet internationally approved and accepted quality standards, the programme contracts an independent Quality Assurance Laboratory to conduct quality checks on random samples of first and second line anti-TB drugs drawn from GMSDs, state drug stores and district drug stores.
7) **Uninterrupted supply of first and second line drugs over the last plan period.**

Challenges
1) **Long lead time for procurement**: There has been a delay in the procurement of Anti TB Drugs, CBNAAT machines and other commodities in the past. These delays are generally due to procedural issues and ensuring compliance of codal formalities.
2) **Inadequate infrastructure at state and district level stores**: Space is a major concern in the state drug stores. In addition basic infrastructure like racks, temperature and humidity monitoring systems, firefighting equipment, computers with internet facility, manpower, communications, funds for transportation of commodities are inadequate.
3) **High turnover of contractual pharmacists**
4) **Packaging/repackaging of 2nd line drug boxes**: Following PMDT guideline, boxes for 2nd Line drugs need to be re-packed at state drugs store and to be supplied to districts. However, there are also instances wherein loose drugs are re-packed in polythene bags or may be sent in loose forms only to districts. There is no uniformity in the packing and distributions of the Second Line Drugs.
5) **Lack of ICT platform for capturing real time information on stock levels, expiry of batches and potential stock out situations results in increased operational strain on supply chain apparatus and can also impact forecasting and procurement planning given delays in reporting from the field.**

Strategic Intervention and activities

**National Level**
1. Strengthening of procurement and supply chain management units
   a. Identifying and hiring at least 10 PSM experts who are competent to assist the programme in procurement, supply chain management, distribution and effective inventory management.
b. Strengthening of infrastructure at state and district level for storage of medical commodities and supplies including drugs.
c. Institutional learning: Training on Procurement and Drug Logistics Management for regions, Inclusion of the Chief Medical Officers, Assistant Depot Managers and the dealing Pharmacists of the Six Regional Government Medical Stores Depots which will be the new primary stocking points for all the anti-TB drugs both First Line and Second Line

2. Prepare and circulate guidelines for facilitating procurement of commodities at state level for:
   a. Lab consumables, CBNAAT cartridges, packaging materials
   b. Local procurement of drugs in case of emergency (i.e. national level drug stock is less than 3 months or as may be directed)
   c. Use of ICT solution for real time inventory and stock data for forecasting and quantification.

3. Use ICT systems in PSM: Procurement of barcode readers & printers, connectivity solution for real time data exchange and for end to end visibility within the supply chain

4. Mechanisms for making available public sector drugs to patients in the private sector will be developed as a programme priority considering the focus on reaching out to patients in the private sector.

**State Level**

5. Set up state level PSM unit comprised of STO, consultants, Technical Officer – Procurement and supply chain management, etc. with periodical support from central level at RNTCP
   a. A new position for inventory manager / PSM coordinator for district level proposed.
   b. Additional store assistant at SDS (>3000 boxes being packed per month)

6. Enable capacity building for all staff through:
   a. Revamped and refresher trainings and adaptation of methodologies including e-modules, video conference discussion forums, supervisory checklist
   b. Develop booklets on drug inventory management for sub district levels
   c. Update of SOPs and training manual for supply chain management for all levels PSM activities
   d. Induction trainings for new recruits and appointees under drug management
   e. One central level training for all states in a year including the officials from Government Medical Stores Depots.
   f. State level trainings and field visits to be conducted by CTD over a period of 2-3 years

7. Supervision and M&E
   a. Periodic field visit by representatives of central team to 1 SDS, 2 DTCs, 4 TUs and PHIs in a state

8. Gap analysis and upgradation of infrastructure at all storage facilities including
   a. Provision of ACs for 1st and 2nd line drugs store up to TU levels
   b. Storage space assessment at state level
   c. Implement connectivity solution for drug, laboratory consumables and commodities, especially 628 rapid molecular test machines to get real time data on performance and ensure quality assurance
   d. Upgrade store infrastructure to ensure good storage practices and good distribution practices.

9. The State shall be allowed to write off up to 2% of cost of annual supply of drugs on implementation of DST guided treatment and 2% cost of rapid molecular test cartridges

10. Policies/guidelines for the following will be devised during this plan period.
    a. Insurance policy for in-transit drugs and commodities
    b. Annual Maintenance Contracts
    c. Transportation system for inter and intra state transfers.
d. Packaging of anti TB drugs-development of technical specifications and revision as may be necessary from time to time.
e. Disaster management processes at all levels from inventory perspectives
CHAPTER 19
COSTING AND FINANCING THE NSP

Budget and Funding for National Strategic Plan for TB

To achieve Government of India’s ambitious targets of eliminating TB, the National TB programme require an escalated resource envelope to ensure uninterrupted and timely implementation of the programme activities. An estimated budget of ₹12,327 crores will be required over next three years to transform TB control and achieve the national goal of ending TB as a major public health problem by 2025. This resource envelope envisages to cover the following activities as has been detailed in the prior chapters.

1. Large scale strengthening of the existing programme activities
2. Introduction of new activities to reach patients seeking care from private providers
3. Increase case detection by systematic screening in key populations
4. Deploy a world-class national surveillance and tracking system for TB patients
5. Provide patient support via DBT to address catastrophic costs and improve nutrition
6. Further strengthening of supply chain management and financial management systems using ICT tools

Detecting and treating all TB and MDRTB patients will require widespread use of newer diagnostic tools, newer treatment regimens and innovative methods to manage TB patients using information technology. This will require large scale investments. The details of the resources required are given below in the tables.

Summary of the funding for TB Control in India:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Financial year</th>
<th>Allocation</th>
<th>Expenditure</th>
<th>Budget - existing program activities</th>
<th>Budget - existing program activities + new activities + patient social &amp; nutritional support</th>
<th>TB Case notification (in million)</th>
<th>DRTB notifications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2012-13</td>
<td>667.00</td>
<td>625.84</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.47</td>
<td>14059</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013-14</td>
<td>816.76</td>
<td>813.02</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.45</td>
<td>20763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2014-15</td>
<td>1666.45</td>
<td>1418.03</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.55</td>
<td>24073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015-16</td>
<td>1340.00</td>
<td>1339.86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>27104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016-17*</td>
<td>1640.00</td>
<td>1339.06</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.70</td>
<td>33000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017-18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2054.61</td>
<td>2523.01</td>
<td>3135.61</td>
<td>2.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018-19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2143.01</td>
<td>3228.58</td>
<td>4115.64</td>
<td>3.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2019-20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2566.41</td>
<td>3901.45</td>
<td>5075.95</td>
<td>3.35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*2016-17* upto Jan 2017
*2017-18 onwards projections*
Existing activities:

In addition to passive screening for symptoms based on diagnostic algorithm for all patients attending health facilities; targeted 120 million key population will be actively screened in the community. Out of all individuals screened actively and passively, it is expected that over 30 million persons will be offered tests for diagnosis of TB with at least half of them getting highly sensitive rapid molecular diagnostics. Over 4.5 million TB patients and 0.18 million DR TB patients are targeted to be diagnosed and notified to the programme. Daily regimen with fixed dose combination of first-line anti-TB drugs will be expanded nationwide in 2017 itself. Over 1500 molecular diagnostics and over 120 specialized culture and DST laboratories will be established for further decentralization of diagnostic services. Compared to the prior 5 years, this will double the number of TB patients detected and treated, and increase by 3-fold the number of MDR TB patients and 10-fold increase in Pre XDR/XDR TB patients including >20,000 patient treated with newer drugs in next three years.

New Activities:

These include coverage of patients from private sector through reimbursement of diagnostics, notification by the private providers, provision for FLD drugs and incentives for treatment support for 4.2 million TB patients. It also includes coordination mechanism for 2.2 million TB patients for extending the programme drugs through innovative mechanisms in private sector. Support for 9 million culture test for TB patients follow-up after TB treatment. It also includes the world class ICT support with establishment of call centres with provision for 10 crores minutes call time for supporting all the TB patients, SMS reminders to 4.2 million TB patients and provision of 50,000 PDA devises for digitalization

Patient Social & Nutritional support:

The programme will provide a support of Rs.3000 per patients to incentivize treatment completion via DBT for treatment support (notification, travel, monthly collection of drugs and follow-up examinations) for all TB patients to address catastrophic costs. The cost to provide this social and nutritional support is for all TB patients including public and private sector.
## National Strategic Plan for Tuberculosis - Budget for (Financial year - 2017-18 to 2019-20)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particulars</th>
<th>Physical Unit</th>
<th>Major Activities</th>
<th>Amount in ₹ / INR crore</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Programme budget for existing activities including enhancement</td>
<td>2017-18</td>
<td>2018-19</td>
<td>2019-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Additional budget for new activities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a Diagnostics: (additional)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnostics (CBNAAT, X-Ray) cost (including operational cost) (direct services / reimbursements)</td>
<td>9000.00</td>
<td>15000.00</td>
<td>1800.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purchasing Culture services for follow-up examination of public &amp; private sector patients **</td>
<td>1800.000</td>
<td>30000.00</td>
<td>3600.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b Drugs: (additional)</td>
<td>9000.00</td>
<td>150000.00</td>
<td>1800.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment First-line anti-TB (FDCs + 10% Loose drugs + pediatric formulation) drug cost</td>
<td>9000.00</td>
<td>150000.00</td>
<td>1800.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particulars</td>
<td>Physical Unit</td>
<td>Major Activities</td>
<td>Amount in ₹ / INR crore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c Coordination, Engagement &amp; Treatment adherence:</td>
<td></td>
<td>Includes management of the 4.2 million patients for notification, treatment adherence and provisions of program drugs to private sector patients through social marketing mechanisms and support systems for public health action.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incentives to Private practitioners per patient notified &amp; treatment support</td>
<td>9000 00</td>
<td>150000 0 1800 000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient provider support scheme (NGO/agencies)</td>
<td>9000 00</td>
<td>150000 0 1800 000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linkages of existing drugs (to manage, facilitate delivery of programme procured drugs for 50% of private sector patients)</td>
<td>4500 00</td>
<td>750000 0 9000 00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reimbursement system management for 50% of private sector patients</td>
<td>4500 00</td>
<td>750000 0 9000 00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICT Platform:</td>
<td></td>
<td>Includes the ICT platform with ~30,000 PDA devises for management of 8.7 million TB patients through the 250 seats call centres with adherence mechanisms through 99-DOTS, SMS reminders and other ICT based platforms.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>District level Surveillance Medical Officer</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient Social &amp; Nutritional Support:</td>
<td>1762 500</td>
<td>240000 0 2680 000</td>
<td>Includes sustenance of Rs. 500 per month during treatment of TB via DBT to the patient as social and nutritional support for all the projected 8.7 Million TB patients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>(in INR ₹ crore)</td>
<td>(in million USD @67 INR)</td>
<td>3135.61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Implementing the financial aspect of NSP**

RNTCP will be implemented in line with National Strategic Plan with effect from 01st April 2017 with the proposed allocation as given in Annexure J. The implementing agency will continue to be the Central TB Division (CTD), Ministry of Health and Family Welfare (MoH&FW), Government of India (GOI). The Controller of Aid, Accounts and Audit (CAA&A) of Department of Economic Affairs (DEA),...
Ministry of Finance (MoF), Government of India will maintain a Special Account in the Reserve Bank of India that will be operated. This will be a centrally sponsored scheme wherein, the State Health Societies, District Health Societies /Municipal Corporation Health Societies will maintain a separate sub-account for receiving the funds from the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare for TB Control Activities and implementation of the project activities within the concerned state/ district/ Municipal Corporation. All state governments who have agreed to implement the project as per RNTCP Guidelines have signed a Memorandum of Understanding.

There is adequate experience at the central and state level for the disbursement and financial management of the project funds. The project has provided training to the finance staff at state level in maintenance of the records and forwarding the necessary reports. The Finance staff at central level has also provided training to staff at state/district level during their visits to the states and conducting group training. The programme is now scaling up the use of the Public Financial Management System (PFMS) for financial reporting. RNTCP has planned to initiate the state level trainings and it is expected that by end of 2017, use of PFMS will be streamlined in all states of the country. The states have sufficient capacity to plan and utilize the funds for project activities as also maintain requisite records and generate the required reports to be provided to the CTD, MOHF&W and other agencies. The project at the central level has a Finance Unit (staffed by Finance consultants, Finance Manager, Jr. Consultant - Accounts, Consultant - Accounts) at the Central TB Division. At the state level, there is an Accounts Officer/Accountant (Two accountants in larger states) and the districts to have a full time accountant. The CTD will continue to make efforts to enhance the capacity for financial management at state and district level by visits by central staff for internal reviews, identifying training needs and providing the necessary training.

The project has been making financial performance-based disbursements to the states in the earlier phase. Releases of funds to the states has been based on the expenditures incurred, balances held in the states and districts and expected expenditures in the next two quarters. There has been however no direct linkage between the budgets of the states, action plans, programmatic progress, records of proceedings (ROP) and releases of funds to the states. These linkages will be developed and states will be encouraged to prepare budgets related to action plans every year. The states will also be required to monitor their performance regularly based on the budgets versus expenditures.

TB programme will be implemented in mission mode and adequate structural changes will be adopted at central, state and district level for local resource generation to implement the local solution to the local challenges being faced by TB programme. Necessary registrations with appropriate authorities will be acquired and fund management systems with transparency would be established at all the necessary levels to enable acceptance of the resources, through banking channel or in kind, for investments in TB programme activities. All efforts will be made to ensure to prevent duplication of funding for same activities.

Budgeting and flow of funds

The funding for RNTCP will be through the MOHF&W budget with project funds as a special allocation. Flow of funds from CTD to state societies will be in two to three instalments to the concerned state Health/TB society. The initial allocation will be based on cash flow forecasts of societies (based on their action plan and budgets) and allocation made available by the MOHFW for RNTCP. Subsequent funds will be released based on expenditures and projected requirement for release of funds.

The budgets will be prepared by the states. These will be compiled from the district budgets that have been examined and consolidated at state level. Budgetary norms have been specified for planning of activities. The budgets will be supported by state and District annual action plans. These will be approved by the Executive Committee of the state NHM, followed by the final approvals of
the National Programme Coordination Committee (NPCC) Meeting under the MoHFW and will form the basis of release of funds and monitoring project implementation by state and CTD.

**Accounting, Internal Controls and Finance Indicators**

Societies will maintain books of accounts using double entry book keeping principles. A Chart of Accounts will be provided to capture the expenditure under various categories that will match closely with the budget heads to enable measurement of financial performance. The Societies will incur expenditures based on guidelines as given in the ‘Financial Manual for RNTCP’. The financial records will be reviewed periodically by Finance staff at CTD and state to identify weaknesses and take measures for capacity building.

The following financial indicators shall be used to review the key financial activities in the states/districts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Source(s) of Verification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Key Financial personnel in place in centre and states</td>
<td>Staff in position</td>
<td>Appointment orders</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 3 Undertake financial management performance evaluation of entities based on agreed criteria and methodology | Quarterly / Annual Financial Monitoring Reports | • Report on variance between estimated date of fund receipt and actual date of release.  
• Financial management proforma |
| 4 Ensure streamlined system of funds-flow (centre to state and state to District) | • Action plans and Budgets prepared and forwarded by states/districts to state and CTD respectively in time  
• Audit reports of previous FY of acceptable quality submitted by 30 September every year  
• Consolidated SOEs forwarded by states to CTD within 30 days of end of quarter | • Action Plan and Budget of State and District  
• Audit reports / Consolidated SOEs |

Internal control system will include the following:

(a) Establishment of appropriate budgeting systems and regular monitoring of actual financial performance with budgets and targets;

(b) Adoption of simple, clear and transparent financial and accounting policies. These policies will include identification of expenditures that can be charged to the project and the categories under which it can be charged; policies and procedures for transfer of funds and accounting of expenditures.
Financial reporting

The financial reporting will commence at districts that will provide SOE to the state with an electronic copy to CTD. The state in turn will consolidate the SOE and forward to CTD. CTD will compile the SOEs from all entities and claim reimbursement, if any from the external funding agencies. However, once PFMS is streamlined, the process of submission of SOE will be withdrawn. After audited statements are received the balances at STCS and DTCS will be revised. The reports will include comparison of budgeted and actual expenditures and analysis of major variances. The release of first installment will be based on consolidated SOEs of state for year ending 31st March. The second and third installment will be released on receipt of consolidated audit report, utilization certificate and SOE of the latest quarter.

Auditing arrangements

The Director General of Audit (Central Expenditure) (DGACE) under Comptroller and Auditor General (CAG) will audit the accounts of CTD. Local Chartered Accountant firms on the panel of CAG/state AG appointed by state/NHM will audit the state and district societies on an annual basis. The STCS/NHM will contract the firm for audit of all state and district societies. It is primarily a performance audit which looks into the economy, efficiency and effectiveness of scheme implementation. The auditors will carry out such tests and controls as deemed necessary by them. This may include visits to districts, verification of bank accounts, physical inspection etc. as per the Terms of Reference which will be forwarded by CTD as per Operational Policies of funding agencies/NHM. The Audit reports will be forwarded to CTD within four months of close of financial year (as per external funding agencies, if any, Operational Policies). All SHS, DPMUs, CHCs, PHCs along with other implementing agencies are responsible to make compliance of audit observations made in the audit report within the timeline prescribed by the controlling authority. CTD will compile these and forward to appropriate authorities in Government/External Funding Agencies, if any.

Innovative mechanisms for resourcing the NSP

Innovative mechanisms will be the openness and creative thinking of the programme. It also emphasizes the willingness of the programme to think “out of the box” for devising solutions to difficult challenges in TB elimination.
CHAPTER 20
IMPLEMENTATION OF THE NSP

Introduction

The strategies proposed in this NSP aspire to achieve more than double the patient notification over the next 3 years. This necessitates a paradigm shift in the way the programme is implemented. The strategies that relate to policy and regulatory support, programme management restructuring, HR capacity augmentation, evidence based technical solutions, new surveillance structures, use of digital health solutions and substantially increased programme funding, proposed in this NSP, support efficient and effective implementation. The aspirations of the NSP cannot be achieved without the planning and provision of sufficient resources such as time, money, assets and people. The implementation approach is crucial in the planning process that the programme undertakes when developing the operational plans and the annual project implementation plans. A process of monitoring and reporting allows these strategies to be evaluated and alterations incorporated to ensure strategies and actions continue to be in line with delivering the aspirations detailed in the NSP.

Implementation approach

A twin track approach will be used for the Implementation of the NSP. Prioritized strategies for achieving a rapid decline in the incidence and mortality of TB to be able to meet the SDG goal for TB five years ahead of time will be undertaken with increased intensity while the ongoing programme strategies will be reinvigorated to support these ambitious targets. Implementing the NSP will see the development of 5 year operational plans followed by the annual plans of the programme at the state and national levels, which will draw from this NSP. The results
framework (RF) will guide the development of the annual plans and also for tracking the progress of the interventions.

**Quality improvement across the TB care cascade**

The NSP focuses on quality improvement at all levels in both the public and private sectors. The newly created surveillance structure will ensure a continuous monitoring and management of the processes that is data driven and fed primarily by eNikshay.

**Structures**

To take full advantage of the high level commitment for TB control nationally, the programme will make functional and organizational changes and rebalance the skill-mix composition of its staff and management. This entails the creation of the TB Elimination Board and other structures as detailed in the chapter on HSS in the section **BUILD**, to ensure highest level of political commitment, adequate finances and other resources and support from all the ministries. Strengthening programme capacity to sharpen focus on NSP results, including private sector collaborations, health system strengthening and building an enabling environment is costly in the short term but will yield significant dividends over the next decades. The requisite skill-mix adjustment will be undertaken with the least amount of disruption in programme activities.

**Partnerships**

To harmonize national TB control efforts, increase selectivity and achieve complementarity the national programme will seek collaborative partnerships with global and local partners. The national programme will continue to concentrate its knowledge creation and policy advice activities on its areas of comparative advantage. It will seek its partners’ advice on areas in which it has limited or no comparative benefit. Synergistic efforts of all stakeholders involved in TB control in India are the key towards realizing the goal of “Universal access to TB care and treatment for all”. It is known that the government is not the sole provider of services for TB and optimum efforts will be made to utilize the resources in the private sector. In this context an enabling environment will be created through regular interaction with partners involved in TB control and promoting innovative TB control initiatives at district, state and national level.

The programme defines partnership as an arrangement between any two or more entities; most often, government owned entity on one side and a private sector entity on the other, for the provision of public assets and/or public services, through investments being made and/or management being undertaken by the private sector entity, for a specified period of time. Such arrangements may have options of receiving performance linked incentives that conform (or are benchmarked) to specified and pre-determined performance standards, measurable by the public entity or its representative.

This concept of partnership is much broader as compared to previous approaches of Public Private Mix (PPM) under RNTCP which entailed strategies that link all entities within the private and public sectors (including health providers in other governmental ministries) to the national TB programme.

RNTCP has formed the National Technical Working Group on Public Private Mix to provide a forum for dialogue, to ensure sustained attention on the issue, and guide innovation and learning. Institutional mechanisms to support the states for effective contract management, hiring PPSA agencies to manage activities of engaging private sector and other partnership-strengthening functions need to be developed.

Details of partnerships are available in the National Guideline for Partnerships which provides information on how different stakeholders can supplement the efforts of the government for TB
control in India. Further details can be referenced in the National Guidelines and the TOG available on www.tbcindia.org.

**Developing capacity to produce first-line drugs for RNTCP**

Five public sector units (PSUs) are already manufacturing anti-TB drugs in India. Under the ‘Make in India’ thrust of the government of India, it is proposed to explore the possibility of developing capacity to produce first-line drugs for RNTCP in the public sector with following options:

1. Assess the current capacity and further build the capacity so that PSUs manufacture first-line anti-TB drugs for all patients of RNTCP with GOI’s own investment
2. Partnership of PSUs with major India manufactures manufacture first-line anti-TB drugs with arrangement for sharing total products with minimal / free drugs for RNTCP patients and allowing partner manufactures to sell for other NTPs in high burden and African countries with co-branding of GOI (Make in India). Consider waving off of customs duty, import/export facilitation and sales tax.

The anticipated benefits include the following:

1. Country’s branding gives strategic role in global development agenda
2. Cost effectiveness over current arrangement
3. Better control over drugs availability (prevention of stock outs)
4. Enhanced employment for skilled youths

There exists successful example from a Brazil.

**Outsourcing and procurement of services from the private sector**

With a heavy workload expected owing to the ambitious strategies of this NSP, outsourcing of select functions will make such functions efficient and ultimately improve the access of TB services to hitherto unreached populations. These functions include:

a. Enlist private laboratories to support diagnostic functions through a policy intervention.

b. The programme also envisages a shift away from a quality assured laboratory to an empaneled laboratory.

c. Promote sputum collection and transport through a courier company.

d. Outsourcing of HR management structure to an HR management agency – Ensures a 60% of burn rate with enhanced efficiency of HR management processes and systems. Outsourcing also saves the district programme manager from time consuming administrative functions and also decreases the legal liability for the government.

e. Enhance contracting management capacity at centre and state level

f. Moving towards performance based contracts
ANNEX A. DIAGNOSTIC ALGORITHM IN RNTCP

Diagnostic algorithm for pulmonary TB

Presumptive TB patient

- Smear Examination
- CXR

Smear Positive and CXR suggestive of TB

- CBNAAT

Smear Positive, but CXR not suggestive of TB

- Clinical Suspicion High

Smear Negative but CXR suggestive of TB

PMDT criteria, high MDR settings

MTB detected

- Rif sensitive

- Rif Indeterminate

- Rif Resistant

MTB not detected or CBNAAT result not available

Refer to management of Rif Resistance

Consider alternate diagnosis and refer to specialist

Indeterminate on 2nd sample, collect fresh sample for Liquid Culture / LPA

Rif sensitive

Repeat CBNAAT on 2nd sample

Rif Indeterminate

Microbiologically Confirmed TB

Rif Resistant

*All presumptive TB cases should be offered HIV counseling and testing; however diagnostic work up for TB must not be delayed.

Diagnosis algorithm for extra pulmonary TB

Presumptive EPTB patient

- Appropriate specimen from site

Available

- If CBNAAT is not available

MTB detected

- Rif sensitive

- Rif Indeterminate

- Rif Resistant

MTB not detected

Culture Positive

Culture Negative

Use other diagnostic tools

Microbiologically Confirmed EPTB

No TB

Liquid Culture

High Clinical suspicion

Clinically diagnosed TB

Alternate diagnosis

Repeat CBNAAT on fresh specimen

Refer to management of Rif resistance

Indeterminate on 2nd specimen, collect fresh sample for Liquid Culture

*If high clinical suspicion then follow high clinical suspicion flow diagram

The details of the algorithm can be found in the Technical and Operational guidelines of RNTCP, 2016 accessed at www@tbcindia.gov.in.
ANNEX B: ICT INITIATIVES

Effective ICT enablement is the cornerstone for continued engagement with patients throughout their treatment life cycle. A patient centric and user friendly ICT solution accessible to programme staff over a tablet enabling near real-time patient information capture, would largely simplify patient tracking and monitoring. Further, automation of ancillary programme functions such as targeted patient benefit transfers, health worker honorarium transfers, supply chain management and diagnostics uptake would significantly aid in improving clinical outcomes and overall operational efficiency. Several ICT initiatives have been planned to that effect, including enhancement of existing ICT enabled solutions and adoption of newer ideas.

Fig. XX: ICT Solutions

NIKSHAY (the existing ICT solution) has been enhanced to support BDQ conditional access pilot roll out and CBNAAT cartridge usage monitoring. In view of introduction of FDC, BDQ and other expected new drugs and regimens over the next few years, a module on pharmacovigilance for Cohort event Monitoring has been developed, which has also been integrated with Vigiflow solution of PvPI.

eNIKSHAY, a mobile-based solution is being developed to enable patient data entry at source to facilitate near real time notification of both publicly and privately treated TB patients. eNIKSHAY would enable:

- Capture of complete patient information including, patient identifiers, diagnosis, treatment schedule (regimens, dosages, adherence mechanism) and chosen benefit schemes
- Generation of task lists for programme staff (providing patient wise details) to take appropriate follow up action. For E.g. Task list of patients, ‘diagnosed by DMC as sputum +ve but not initiated on treatment’ would elicit the action of tracing the patient and initiate him/her on treatment
- Reminder SMS to patients on pre-defined triggers such as treatment initiation/interruption or as a follow up test is due etc.
- Information SMS to patients for increasing awareness or for counselling
• E-Payment of nutritional support/enabler honorarium subsequent to treatment continuation / completion
• Direct Benefit Transfer of scheme benefits to all notified health facilities and patients
• Generation of reports and dashboards for programme level decision making.
• GIS-based disease hotspot mapping
• Integration with other national/state eHealth systems, disease registries and public finance systems

A number of innovative patient engagement tools are being evaluated for implementation to strengthen treatment adherence monitoring. This would result in overall improvement in patient awareness and treatment adherence, resulting in reduced loss to follow up cases. These tools include 99DOTS, mobile based “Pill-in-Hand” adherence monitoring devices, patient compliance toolkit, automated pill loading system and IVR / SMS gateway for patient to report day to day events like pill consumption, minor side effects or need for help through simple SMS templates.

An offline mobile application for increasing patient awareness on TB and overall digital health literacy would also be developed and made available for free public consumption. Information regarding TB diagnostic and treatment services, enablers, grievance redressal through call center support would be made available on the mobile application.

RNTCP is also evaluating adoption of an ICT based benefits management system to prevent errors, leakages and delays in transfer of central and state-provisioned welfare benefits for TB patients. The DBT scheme for the TB programme also provisions for Aadhaar\textsuperscript{14} seeding of beneficiaries in the benefit management system and online/ smart card-based authentication services for benefit delivery. This provides a tamper-proof storage of user and account identity while also allowing for a comprehensive multi-sectoral multi-scheme benefit to the treatment care receiver. This smart card would act as a single unique identifier for patients across private and public sector, insurance and across different central and state social welfare schemes that may become available to the patients over the course of treatment. This smart card would also have inter-operability with a range of devices including ATM machines for payments, patient information recording devices for programme’s recording and reporting and follow-up activities. The level of utilization and utility of the smart card would be scaled up as internet infrastructure develops across India.

A robust, modern MIS system would be developed to monitor patients through the treatment cascade including but not limited to delivery of the drug kit to the patient, compliance to treatment regimen, etc. This system provide basic and advanced BI/Analytics capabilities to the end users, with multi-dimension analysis and multi-stakeholder views. This system would also have suitable linkages with the private pharmacy on sale of anti-TB drugs thereby integrating those patients into the MIS. TB case notifications would also be facilitated through the TB case management and surveillance system which would get reflected on e-NIKSHAY portal.

As part of staff capacity building, trainings of programme staff, partners, and volunteers on reporting formats would migrate to an electronic interface to enable easy access at the convenience of user. Additionally, custom technical solutions would be implemented for addressing supply chain management functions including forecasting and quantification and drug inventory management through real time stock status information. There are also plans to implement a remote connectivity solution for CBNAAT machines to track usage and performance in real time.

\textsuperscript{14} Aadhaar is a unique identification number issued to every resident of India by the UIDAI. Aadhaar is issued based on an individual’s demographic and biometric information after de-duplication and is fast becoming the government’s base for public welfare and citizen services.
ANNEX C. RESEARCH PRIORITIES

Research priorities for TB control in India are listed under the following sub-themes:

1. **Strengthening surveillance and TB notifications**
   - To identify and test various interventions to strengthen the case based electronic TB notification system (Nikshay) across the country
     - The studies include assessing provider related challenges, novel demand generation efforts targeted at patients – so they demand notification from their providers, assessment of penalties for under notification, evaluation of new tools or technologies that will help in improving notification by private sector and public health action.
   - Identification of sources of under-notification of TB cases through inventory studies (capture/recapture), Sentinel sites or through ‘onion model’ approach
   - Integration of routine laboratory screening for TB & DR-TB from public and private sector laboratories into a unified TB and DR-TB reporting and surveillance systems.
     - This effort, in the context of universal DST efforts, can replace large scale surveys if effectively implemented. Success will require improving testing for drug resistant TB and reporting of it across the country in both public and private sector. The systems of data integration, analysis, validation, and dissemination, can be regardless immediately developed.
   - Evaluate the quality of data that’s collected through the routine notification system
   - Validation and strengthening of routine medical certification of the cause of death
   - Establishment of a registry for documenting TB among health care workers

2. **Improvement of TB disease burden estimation**
   - A series of state-representative prevalence survey that will allow estimation of TB prevalence at the national and state levels
     - This study can also provide information on the distribution of various genotypes/strains in India, strains/mutations associated with drug resistance etc., and also the prevalence of mixed infections with various strains.
   - Studies to identify determinants of adverse TB treatment outcomes (including those for drug resistant TB) through longitudinal cohort surveys and interventions to address these determinants.
     - A PROSPECTIVE COHORT study for TB patients treated with daily FDCs, with isolates and genotyped, powered for relapse among subgroups (e.g. non-RIF DR-TB, HIV, diabetics), also with genotyping.
   - Repeat prevalence surveys, verbal autopsy surveys, DRS surveys after 5 years
     - If the notification system is strengthened and if universal DST is offered by the programme then, these surveys may not be necessary.
   - Relapse/re-infection (a is study under progress)
   - Interventions to improve Medical Certification of Cause of Death in Partnership with Registrar General of India

3. **Understanding TB transmission and how best to interrupt it**
   - Use of molecular methods to understand TB disease dynamics/transmission in various settings
     - Identify hot spots for TB transmission– Using molecular epidemiological methods
• Evaluate interventions to reduce transmission at households and at the community level especially in urban slums and congregate settings.
• Assess the compliance to airborne infection control guidelines at health facilities and interventions aimed at improving compliance

4. **Demand generation, Prevention, systematic screening of high-risk groups, and early case finding.**
• To find the optimum combination of interventions for early case detection and improving treatment outcomes both in public and private sector
• Assessing the effectiveness of various models to engage private sector health care providers in India for diagnosis and treatment of patients.
• Studies to assess the feasibility, acceptability, operational challenges, predictability, effectiveness in reducing diagnostic delays etc., of the various diagnostic algorithms in the new technical and operational guidelines
• Smear negative TB
  o Studies to assess accuracy of diagnosis at various levels of health system in detecting smear negative, culture or CB-NAAT positive TB.
  o Studies that assess the effect of capacity building (for MO-PHI) on reading chest radiographs in diagnosis of pulmonary TB
  o Diagnostic algorithm using Xpert / smear needs a relook as dead bacilli may persist for variable periods of time and there are instances (case reports) where Xpert positive previously treated patients became asymptomatic after a course of broad spectrum antibiotics and did not require ATT
• Childhood TB and extra-pulmonary TB
  o Accuracy and challenges for diagnosis at various levels of the health system
  o Effect of capacity building for obtaining appropriate biological specimens on the diagnosis of pediatric TB
• Intensified case finding
  o Diagnosis of TB in High risk individuals at health facilities/institutions- development of algorithms/ assessing the appropriateness of the existing algorithms.
  o Active case finding in High risk populations (close contacts/slums/tribal populations/occupational risk groups/closed institutions)— Assessment/development of effective algorithms
• Drug resistant TB
  o Developing guidelines to address/deal with discordance in drug resistance patterns between different diagnostic tools/tests.
  o Adequacy of follow-up sputum smears examination at 2-months and 6 months among patients on TB treatment in timely diagnosis of MDR-TB. A previous study had shown that mid-CP sputum examination does not add much value in early diagnosis of MDR-TB, however, this study was based on reviewing routine programmatic data [26]and there is a need for re-examining this issue using more rigorous culture based methods.
• Use of Information Communication Technology for lab information systems and its effect on patient tracking and preventing pre-treatment loss to follow-up.
• Studies to evaluate / modify lab quality assurance protocols
• Studies to identify context specific communication strategies for early and complete detection of TB cases.
• Innovative strategies using CBOs and NGOs to spread TB awareness in the community and its effect on controlling TB in the communities.
• Call for more research on community engagement/community ownership activities as part of ACSM
• Community driven models to evaluate the quality of RNTCP services using grass root level workers and community representatives for timely intervention
• Studies on care seeking behaviour studies among migrants and hard to reach groups in terms of reaching care in the RNTCP
• Larger scale innovative intervention studies to improve TB services among tribal populations
• Screening strategies to improve case finding among the corporate sectors, other occupations such as drivers (public and private)
• Evaluate interventions to reduce transmission in urban slums and congregate settings.
  o E.g., Effectiveness of various interventions to promote cough hygiene at the community level.
• Studies to explore vulnerable groups for TB to facilitate targeted interventions (Drivers, migrants, miners etc)
• Implementation research on various providers of treatment support at the community level to be included in the programme.

5. Improving the cascade of care in public and private sector care
• Interventions to prevent pre-treatment loss to follow-up (~5-20% of the patients diagnosed at various levels of the health care system are estimated to be lost to follow-up prior treatment)
  • Treatment support systems
    o Demonstration studies using new tools to improve adherence (e.g., medication monitors[27])
    o Demonstration of models to link patients to various welfare schemes and its effect on patient welfare and TB treatment outcomes
    o Studies evaluating the effect of providing financial incentives to patients and providers of treatment support in promoting adherence to treatment and treatment outcomes (e.g., cash transfer, microfinance interventions[28])
  • Monitoring response to treatment
    o Studies assessing compliance/feasibility of monthly clinical monitoring of patients (including children) on TB treatment (as outlined in the new technical and operational guidelines)
    o Identify barriers to culture based declaration of treatment outcomes (as outlined in the new technical and operational guidelines) and how to address them
    o Death audit - development of tools and demonstrating its feasibility under various programmatic conditions
  • Monitoring and managing the side effects/ adverse events of anti-TB drugs
    o Timely identification, reporting and effective management
    o Role of health staff at different levels and effect of training various health staff on timely management of these adverse events
• Drug resistant TB MDR/pre-XDR-TB/ XDR-TB
  o Studies for streamlining the management of Mono-Poly drug resistant TB/MDR-TB with mixed patterns of resistance
• Use/efficiency of ICT (eg., NIKSHAY) in tracking patients who migrate during TB treatment
- Post treatment follow-up
  - Assessing feasibility and addressing barriers for implementing the current RNTCP guideline of 2 years post treatment follow-up of TB patients to identify relapse early.
- Preventive therapy
  - Identifying individuals/groups (other than HIV, child contacts) who are likely to benefit from treatment of latent TB infection
  - Effectiveness and feasibility of shorter preventive treatment regiments
- Non-Tuberculous mycobacteria:
  - Proportion of NTM disease among treatment non-responders
  - Studies that assess the diagnostic algorithms and treatment regimens for NTM
- Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamics studies in the light of issues of daily FDC introduction (under dosing of INH in 25-39 weight band, overdosing of Rifampicin in >70kg and overall HIV and pediatric group for Indian population)
- Multi centre RCT studies of counselling interventions to address alcohol use disorder, smoking, and malnutrition, to promote better TB medication adherence and treatment outcomes.
- It is also important that programme and policy makers take cognizance of the evidence that is available (as in alcohol intervention and smoking cessation) and include these as priority areas in RNTCP for implementation research.
- Experimental studies using the RCT design to evaluate the impact of trained counsellors in dealing with TB-related stigma, to see if these counselling interventions improve treatment adherence and treatment outcomes especially among MDR-TB patients
- Studies on interventions to reduce stigma and discrimination in families and communities
- Determining the direct and indirect costs (out of pocket expenditure) incurred by TB patients during diagnosis and treatment in various contexts and identifying interventions to reduce them.
- Impact of social interventions on psycho-social condition of drug susceptible and drug resistance TB patients
- Developing interventions for sustainable disease free environment for migrant labourers in industry

6. Socio-economic impact and poverty alleviation
- Estimating cost effectiveness (cost per life saved) of specific new initiatives, such as daily regimens and free drugs in the private sector
- To find the optimum combination of interventions for early case detection and improving treatment outcomes using mathematical models.
- Research to evaluate these direct and indirect costs due to TB
- Evaluation of the access of TB patients to government welfare schemes
- Demonstration of models to link patients to various welfare schemes and its effect on treatment outcomes
- Studies evaluating the effect of financial incentives to patients and providers of treatment support in promoting adherence to treatment and treatment outcomes (e.g., cash transfer, microfinance interventions[28])

7. Strengthening RNTCP management
- Addressing managerial, infrastructure and administrative constraints in implementing RNTCP
  - Studies related to identification and addressing challenges in human resource management[29], financial management, integration into general health services, procurement and logistics management
Barriers to utilization of RNTCP services in high risk populations - urban slums, tribal areas, migrants, prisoners, elderly, diabetics, PLHIVs, high risk occupational groups.

Studies on incorporating newer training tools/techniques and its efficacy

Time motion analysis of programme staff and how to optimize efficiency, on performance improvement programmes to deal with their real issues.

- Quality of care-surveys within public health facilities (for example by using Standardized questionnaires or by prescription audits);
- Patient satisfaction surveys
- Improving routine data usage at district and state levels to improve programme performance (MIFA)
- Locating correlates of health system resilience at district level in dealing with challenging situations (such as high TB-HIV burden, high MDR-TB burden etc.,) and developing interventions to cope with these challenging situations
- Issues with relation to effective infection control measures thereby recommending model RNTCP clinics to curb TB transmission in clinics/tertiary care centres
- Innovative strategies to strengthen health system towards TB notification both at the private and public level.

8. **Integration with State Insurance and UHC initiatives**

   **Research Priorities**
   - Evaluation of the access of TB services under various public and private health insurance scheme.
   - Demonstration of models to link patients to various insurance schemes and its effect on treatment outcomes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Published</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Standards for TB Care in India</td>
<td></td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Joint Monitoring Mission-TB</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>STCI – e-Tool Kit</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Intensified TB Control in India- TB-Mission 2020</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Does Alcohol Consumption during Multidrug-resistant Tuberculosis Treatment Affect Outcome?</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Is Screening for Diabetes among Tuberculosis Patients Feasible at the Field Level?</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Feasibility of Decentralised Deployment of Xpert MTB/ RIF Test at Lower Level of Health System in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Composite Indicator: New Tool for Monitoring RNTCP Performance in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>What Are the Reasons for Poor Uptake of HIV Testing among Patients with TB in an Eastern India District?</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Comparing Same Day Sputum Microscopy with Conventional Sputum Microscopy for the Diagnosis of Tuberculosis – Chhattisgarh</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Tuberculosis Management Practices by Private Practitioners in Andhra Pradesh, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Isoniazid Preventive Treatment in Children in Two Districts of South India: Does Practice Follow Policy?</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Enhancing TB Case Detection: Experience in Offering Upfront Xpert MTB/RIF Testing to Pediatric Presumptive TB and DR-TB Cases for Early Rapid Diagnosis of Drug Sensitive and Drug Resistant TB</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Intensified Tuberculosis Case Finding among Malnourished Children in Nutritional Rehabilitation Centres of Karnataka, India: Missed Opportunities</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Use of Xpert MTB to Enhance Case Detection in Pediatric Age Group in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Use of Moxifloxacin or Gatifloxacin to Shorten First Line Anti TB Treatment</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Optimization of Conventional Minimum Inhibitory Concentration Method for Drug Susceptibility Testing of Ethionamide</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Optimization of Proportion Sensitivity Testing Method for Ethionamide</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>A Multi-site Validation in India of the Line Probe Assay for the Rapid Diagnosis of Multi-drug Resistant Tuberculosis Directly from Sputum Specimens</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Guidelines for EQA of Smear Microscopy - 2014 Update</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Guidelines for Second line DST in RNTCP: 2014 Update</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>EQA for Culture and DST and Molecular DR Tests - RNTCP</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Protocol for Validation of Newer TB Diagnostic Tests</td>
<td>Un-Published Final</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Protocol for Implementation Pilot for Daily Regimen Introduction in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Protocol for National Drug Resistance Survey in India</td>
<td>Un-Published Final</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Protocol for Evaluate the Safety and Effectiveness of Bedaquiline in Adults with New Sputum Smear Positive Multi-drug Resistant Pulmonary Tuberculosis: Expanded Access Programme through RNTCP</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Revised National Laboratory Scale up Plan 2014–19</td>
<td>Un-Published Final</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Guidelines for DST Guided Treatment of All Forms of Drug Resistant TB in India</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>National DRS Training Tool Kit and Training Videos</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Published/Status</td>
<td>Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Guidance Document for Use of GeneXpert under RNTCP in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>PMDT Appraisal Reports of ~520 Districts of India</td>
<td>Un-Published Final</td>
<td>2011-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>PMDT Scale Up Forecasting Tool</td>
<td>Un-Published Final</td>
<td>2011-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Revised Partnership Guidelines for RNTCP in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Alarming Levels of Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis in HIV-Infected Patients in Metropolitan Mumbai, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Innovative Social Protection Mechanism for Alleviating Catastrophic Expenses on Multi-drug Resistant Tuberculosis Patients in Chhattisgarh, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Airborne Infection Control in India: Baseline Assessment in 35 Health Care Facilities</td>
<td>Un-Published Final</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Nationwide Scale-up of Programmatic Management of MDR TB in India</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Unacceptable Treatment Outcomes among India’s Initial Cohorts of MDR TB Programme</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Alarming Levels of Drug-Resistant Tuberculosis in HIV-Infected Patients in Metropolitan Mumbai, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Certification and Scale-up of Culture and Drug Susceptibility Testing Laboratories for Diagnosis of Mycobacterium Tuberculosis in India: Challenges and Lessons Learnt</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>e-SMARTS - Electronic Surveillance and Management of Drug Resistant Tuberculosis: An Innovative Approach towards Better Patient Management in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Transforming TB Control in Mumbai, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>High Relapse among New Smear Positive TB Patients Successfully Treated under National TB Program: Retrospective Cohort Study from Gujarat, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Tuberculosis Burden Estimation using Capture Re-capture Study - Sitamarhi, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>A Collaborative Initiative between the Private Gene Xpert Sites and the Revised National Tuberculosis Control Programme in Bihar State, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>The Impact of e-SMARTS, a Technological Innovation, on Drug Resistant TB Treatment Pathways in Telangana, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>e-Health and m-Health Solutions for National TB Programmes to Track Missing Cases</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Recurrence of TB among Cured NSP TB Patients over One Year Follow-up and Role in Amplification of Resistance</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Does Diagnostic Technology and Travel Distance Reduce Delays in Treatment Initiation of MDRTB Patients in India?</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Controlling Mumbai’s Epidemic of Drug-resistant TB – Towards Universal Drug Susceptibility Testing</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Is Lower Body Weight at Initiation of Treatment More Lethal for TB Patients?</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Finding ‘Missing’ TB Patients: Impact of a Dedicated ‘Cough Corner’ in a Busy Out-patient Public Health Setting of Maharashtra, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Confirmatory Culture Results of Patients with Mycobacterium Tuberculosis (MTB) Not Detected on Xpert MTB/RIF® with Initial Smear Positive Results in Gujarat, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Drug Susceptibility Pattern among Previously Treated Extra-pulmonary Tuberculosis (EPTB) Patients in Gujarat, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Should India Offer Universal Drug Susceptibility Testing to All Tuberculosis Patients?</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Qualitative Evaluation of Patient and Provider Reported Determinants of Drug Susceptibility</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Standards for TB Care in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Occurrence of Sputum Smear Positive Xpert MTB Negative Cases among</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presumptive Multi-drug Resistance Tuberculosis (MDR TB) Patients on</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XPERT MTB/RIF Assay in Tamil Nadu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Recurrence and Death Rate among New Sputum Smears Positive Pulmonary</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TB Patients at 5 years after Completion of Treatment under Revised</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>National TB Control Programme in Banaskantha District of Gujarat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Sputum Collection and Transportation System (SCTS) Improved Case</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Notification and Reduced Patient Costs in Rural Areas of Gujarat,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>NIKSHAY Data Entry Speed and Quality of Various Data Entry Operators</td>
<td>Un-published/draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Cross-sectional Observational Study of Private Sector TB Diagnostics</td>
<td>Un-Published Draft</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Social Support a Key Factor for Adherence to Multidrug Resistant</td>
<td>Un-Published Final</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tuberculosis Treatment: A Qualitative Study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Factors Associated with Tuberculosis and Rifampicin-resistant</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tuberculosis amongst Symptomatic Patients in India: A Retrospective</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Analysis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Piloting Upfront Xpert MTB/RIF Testing on Various Specimens under</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Programmatic Conditions for Diagnosis of TB and DR-TB in Paediatric</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Population</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>The Potential Impact of Up-front Drug Sensitivity Testing on India's</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Epidemic of Multi-drug Resistant Tuberculosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Has Introduction of Rapid Drug Susceptibility Testing at Diagnosis</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impacted Treatment Outcomes among Previously Treated Tuberculosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Patients in Gujarat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Standards for TB Care in India: A Tool for Universal Access to TB Care</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Public–private Mix for TB Care in India: Concept, Evolution, Progress</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Impact of Nutritional Support to Patients on First Line Anti TB</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Treatment in India: A Case Control Study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Impact of Decentralization of Treatment Services in the Management</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of Drug-resistant TB</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Strengthening Tuberculosis Notification by Private Sector: A Way</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Forward for Improving Tuberculosis Care</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Local Self Government Involvement in TB Care in Kerala - Standards</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for TB Care in India</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>Scale-up of Facility Integrated Counselling and Testing Centres and</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PPP ICTCs in India</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Contribution of HIV Testing in TB Patients</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Tuberculosis in Homeless Population in Delhi</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Public-private Partnership in Drug Resistant TB: A Model from Nagpur,</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>India</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Perceptions of Private Practitioners on STCI</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>Screening for Diabetes Mellitus in TB Patients - How Well are We</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Doing?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>Guideline for Use of Bedaquiline under PMDT</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>Revised Technical and Operational Guidelines for RNTCP</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Guidelines for Surveillance for TB in Health Care Workers</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Guidelines for Management of Adverse Drug Reactions to Anti TB Drugs</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Pediatric TB Guidelines</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Public-Private Partnership in TB and HIV: A Case Study of India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>SMSs and IVRS Gateways to Quality TB Care and Treatment Adherence in</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Andhra Pradesh, India</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Systematic Screening of Contacts of DR-TB Patients: Result of a Rapid</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Standards for TB Care in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Implementation of Xpert/MTB RIF under India’s National TB Control Programme</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>A Sustainable Model of Private Provider Engagement via e-Health and Free Drugs, Mehsana, Gujarat, India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>E/M-health Solution for National TB Programme to Track Missing Cases</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>99DOTS: Monitoring and Improving TB Medication Adherence using Mobile Phones and Augmented Packaging</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>Study of Active Case Finding of Tuberculosis in Prisons</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>Severe Malnutrition Impair Treatment Response among India’s Initial MDR-TB Cohorts</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>RNTCP Experience in Rolling Out Baseline 2nd line DST in MDR TB Patients</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>Factors for Diagnostic Delay in Smear Positive TB Cases in India</td>
<td>Published</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANNEX E: COMPILATION OF SOCIAL WELFARE SCHEMES, APPLICABLE TO TB PATIENTS

A. Compensation or support in case of death:

1. National Social Assistance Programme: (Ministry of Rural Development)
   1. Indira Gandhi National Old Age Pension scheme: age > 60 years
   2. Indira Gandhi National Widow Pension scheme: Widow of age > 40 years
   3. Indira Gandhi National Disability Pension scheme: severe disability > 80%

1. National Family Benefit Scheme (NFBS): Rs. 20000/- will be given as a lump sum assistance to the bereaved household in the event of death of the bread-winner. It is clarified that any event of death (natural or otherwise) will make the family eligible for assistance. A woman in the family, who is a home maker, is also considered as a ‘bread-winner’ for this purpose. The family benefit will be paid to such surviving member of the household of the deceased poor, who after local inquiry, is found to be the head of the household. For the purpose of the scheme, the term “household” will include spouse, minor children, unmarried daughters and dependent parents. In case of death of an unmarried adult, the term household will include minor brothers/sisters and dependent parents. The death of such a bread-winner should have occurred whilst he/she is more than 18 years of age and less than 60 years of age. The assistance will be given to every case of death of breadwinner in a family.

In the case of widows, the state may designate a Revenue Authority to issue the certificate. States may also ensure that authorities issuing death certificates for married males, must ensure that name of the surviving wife (widow) is mentioned in the death certificate. It has been reported in several instances, that deserving women are unable to submit their claim for IGNWPS, because the death certificate of their husband does not have their name, to prove their eligibility. Priority to particularly vulnerable individuals and families under all the sub-schemes of NSAP: It is the responsibility of the implementing authorities to adhere to a policy of prioritizing in favour of those applicants whose socio-economic and health condition is vulnerable. Thus, persons who are suffering from long-term/terminal ailments like leprosy, TB, AIDS, Cancer and such like ailments deserve special attention. Similarly, transgender, manual scavengers, bonded labourers, women victims of crime and harassment, deserted women also deserve to be addressed on priority. It is clarified that only BPL persons from the eligible categories will be considered under NSAP except widows suffering from AIDS who will be considered if they are not attracted by any of the exclusion criteria of having a job in government, owning five acres of land or more or owning a four wheeler for own use.

The guiding principle for disbursement of pension has to be the convenience and choice of the beneficiary. Given their physical, social and economic vulnerability, it should be ensured that an infirm/old beneficiary will not have to travel more than 3 kms to access his/her pension account. As far as possible, for people who cannot cover the distance physically, the objective should be to provide door step services. The possible modes of payment are Banks, Post Office Account,
Money Order and Cash disbursement. However the preferred mode of payment should be Bank Account or Post Office Savings Account. At the same time in some areas, crediting the pension amount into the bank/post office may not entirely serve the purpose as the beneficiaries may find it difficult to travel to the nearest bank/post office branch. In order to deliver the pension at the door step, banking correspondent model could be adopted as per the instructions issued by the RBI.

B. Compensation for a victim of silico-tuberculosis
More than 3 million workers mostly in the unorganised sector are exposed to the risk of silicosis, which is a risk factor for development of TB.

These include quarry workers, miners, ceramic, glass workers, gemstones, agate, quartz workers. Silicosis is a notified disease under the Miner’s Act and the Workmen’s compensation act. The National Human Rights Commission has recommended that it may be considered a notifiable disease under the Public Health Act, that silicosis prone industries should have occupational health and safety committees and that the silicosis control programme should be integrated with the Revised National TB Control Programme. (Source: http://nhrc.nic.in/documents/recomm_silicosis.pdf)

The National Human Right Commission (NHRC) has fixed a compensation of Rs 3 lakh in the cases of silicosis victims in Rajasthan. It has directed to pay to the kin of the worker who died out of Silicosis. NHRC thinks that state is responsible for the violation of the human rights so, it is state’s responsibility to pay compensation to the victims.

C. Group Life insurance scheme for low income group persons
Jan Shree Bima Yojana: operated by Life Insurance Corporation of India (Government of India undertaking)

In the events of:
- Death (other than by accident) of the member, an amount of Rs.30,000/- is payable.
- Death/total permanent disability, due to accident, an amount of Rs.75,000/- is payable.
- Permanent partial disability, due to accident, an amount of Rs.37,500/- is payable.

The objective of the scheme is to provide life insurance protection to the rural and urban poor persons below poverty line and marginally above the poverty line.

Eligibility:
A person who is aged between 18 and 59 years and below or marginally above poverty line
A member of any of the approved vocation/ occupation groups

Nodal agency:
A State Government Department which is concerned with the welfare of any such vocation/ occupation group, a Welfare Fund/ Society, Village Panchayat, NGO, Self-Help Group, etc.

Minimum membership size: Twenty five.

Premium: The premium under the scheme is Rs.200/- per annum per member. 50% of the premium i.e. Rs.100/- will be contributed by the member and/or Nodal Agency/ State Government. Balance 50% will be borne by the Social Security Fund.

Approved vocation with occupational groups:
A) The group that can be covered are like workers in -
(i) Foodstuffs like khandsaari
(ii) Textile
(iii) Manufacture of wood products
(iv) Manufacture of paper products
(v) Manufacture of leather products
(vi) Printing
(vii) Rubber and coal products
(viii) Chemical products like candle manufacture
(ix) Mineral products like earthen toys manufacture
(x) Fire cracker's workers
(xi) Construction workers
(xii) Other related cottage industries to be identified by Nodal Agencies and other groups as identified by the Nodal Agency and approved by LIC.

B) The occupational groups are:
- Beedi workers, Brick Kiln Workers (Jalandhar), Carpenters, Cobblers, Fisherman, Hamals, Handicraft Artisans, Handloom Weavers, Handloom and Khadi Weavers, Lady Tailors, Leather and Tannery Workers, Papad Workers attached to 'SEWA', Physically Handicapped self-Employed Persons, Primary Milk Producers, Rickshaw Pullers/ Auto Drivers, Safai Karmacharis, Salt Growers, Tendu Leaf Collectors, Scheme for the Urban Poor, Forest Workers, Sericulture, Toddy Tappers, Powerloom Workers, Scheme for Women in Remote Rural Hilly Areas.

D. Disability assessment and support for livelihood.

A. Guidelines for Evaluation of Physical Impairment due to Cardiopulmonary Diseases.

Basic Guidelines:
1. Modified New York Heart Association subjective classification should be utilized to assess functional disability.
2. The assessing physician should be alert to the fact that patients who come for disability claims are likely to exaggerate their symptoms. In case of any doubt patients should be referred for detailed physiological evaluation.
3. Disability evaluation of cardiopulmonary patients should be done after full medical, surgical and rehabilitative treatment available because most of these diseases are potentially treatable.
4. Assessment of cardiopulmonary impairment should also be done in diseases, which might have associated cardiopulmonary problems eg. Amputees, Myopathies, etc.
5. For respiratory assessment, routine respiratory functions test should be done. However, in cases of interstitial lung diseases, diffusion studies may be done.
6. In cases of Angina Pectoris (chest pain) base line studies in resting ECG should be done. When there is persistence of symptoms, exercise or stress test should be done.

Proposed classification with loss of function is as follows:
A. Group 0: A patient with cardiopulmonary disease who is asymptomatic (i.e has no symptoms of breathlessness, palpitation, fatigue or chest pain).
B. Group 1: A patient with cardiopulmonary disease who becomes symptomatic during his ordinary physical activity but has mild restriction (25%) of his physical activities.
C. Group 2: A patient with cardiopulmonary disease who becomes symptomatic during his ordinary physical activity with 25-50% restriction of his ordinary physical activities.
D. Group 3: A patient with cardiopulmonary disease that becomes symptomatic during less than ordinary physical activity so that his ordinary physical activities are 50-75% restricted.
E. Group 4: A patient with cardiopulmonary disease who is symptomatic even at rest or on mildest exertion so that his ordinary physical activity is severely or completely restricted (75-100%)
F. Group 5: A patient with cardiopulmonary disease who gets intermittent symptoms at rest (i.e. patients with Bronchial Asthma, Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnoea, etc.)

B. Availability of loans at low rates of interest (5.6%)
The National Handicapped Finance and Development Corporation provides loans to persons with disabilities for self employment. The details of the schemes are given as under:
- For setting up small business in service / trading sector – loan of Rs. 3,00,000 (Three lakh)
For setting up small business in sales/trading sector – Rs. 5,00,000 (five lakh)

For agriculture/allied activities – Loan of up to Rs. 10,00,000 (ten lakh)

Purchase of vehicle for commercial hiring – Loan of Rs. 10,00,000 (ten lakh)

For setting up small industries unit – Loan of Rs. 25,00,000 (25 lakh)

For professionally educated/trained persons with disabilities for self-employment – Rs. 25,00,000 (25 lakh)

For building business premises on own land for employment – Rs. 3,00,000 (three lakh)

The business for which financial assistance is sought should be directly operated by the applicant. In case of persons with autism, cerebral palsy or mental retardation, the parent/spouse/legal guardian of the applicant is authorised to enter into contract with NHFDC on behalf of the applicant.

Applicant should fulfil the following eligibility criteria:

- Should have disability of minimum 40 percent
- Should be an Indian citizen
- Should have required professional/technical qualification for the business undertaken
- Loans should be repaid by a maximum of 10 years.

E. Support for food security

A. Antyodya Anna Yojana (Ministry of Food and Civil Supplies)

Antyodaya ration cards are issued to such families who have the income of less than Rs. 250/- per capita per month.

Under the expanded Antyodaya Anna Yojna, exclusive AAY cards are also issued to Senior Citizens who have no regular means of subsistence or societal support, widows and families headed by widows, terminally ill and physically handicapped even if they are not in possession of any APL or BPL card.

Antyodaya cards issued alongside the Below Poverty Line Card provided the per capita income of the applicant is below Rs. 250/- however, for obtaining exclusive AAY card the applicant is required to submit application form duly attested by the Municipal Councillor or Village Sarpanch, two passport size group family photographs and an affidavit duly specified. A Green coloured ration card is issued to the Antyodaya beneficiaries. The AAY card holder is provided 35 Kgs. of rice at the rate of Rs. 3/- per Kg.

B. Food security Act 2013 (Has been implemented in 11 states)

75% of rural population and 50% of the urban population are entitled for three years from enactment to 5 kilograms (11 lb) food grains per month at ₹3, ₹2, ₹1 per kg for rice, wheat and coarse grains (millet), respectively. The states are responsible for determining eligibility criteria; pregnant women and lactating mothers are entitled to a nutritious "take home ration" of 600 Calories and a maternity benefit of at least Rs 6,000 for six months; children 6 months to 14 years of age are to receive free hot meals or "take home rations".

C. TB specific schemes: Apart from the schemes in operation in Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Greater Mumbai, the Government of Chattisgarh has allocated an amount of Rs. 150 million toward nutritional support of about 25,000 patients and their families.

F. Schemes for specific occupational groups:


The Health Insurance Scheme aims at financially enabling the weaver community to access the best of healthcare facilities in the country. The scheme is to cover not only the weaver but his wife and two children,
to cover all pre-existing diseases as well as new diseases and keeping substantial provision for OPD. The ancillary Handlooms workers like those engaged in warping, winding, dyeing, printing, finishing, sizing, Jhala making, Jacquard cutting etc. are also eligible to be covered.

**Eligibility:** The weaver should be earning at least 50% of his income from handloom weaving. 2. The scheme will cover the weaver’s family of four i.e. self, spouse and two children.

The scheme is to cover people between age group of 1 day to 80 years. 3. The weavers belonging to the State Handloom Development Corporations/Apex/Primary Handloom Weavers’ Cooperative Societies will be covered under the Scheme. Weavers outside co-operatives can also be covered under the scheme on a certificate from the State Directorate of Handlooms that they are fulfilling the eligibility conditions.
ANNEX F: NOTIFICATION OF ALL TB PATIENTS

Z-28015/2/2012-TB
Government of India
Ministry of Health and Family Welfare

Nirmal Bhavan, New Delhi
Dated: 7th May 2012

Notification of TB cases

TB continues to be a major public health problem accounting for substantial morbidity and mortality in the country. Early diagnosis and complete treatment of TB is the cornerstone of TB prevention and control strategy. Inappropriate diagnosis and irregular/incomplete treatment with anti-TB drugs may contribute to complications, disease spread and emergence of Drug Resistant TB.

In order to ensure proper TB diagnosis and case management, reduce TB transmission and address the problems of emergence and spread of Drug Resistant-TB, it is essential to have complete information of all TB cases. Therefore, the healthcare providers shall notify every TB case to local authorities i.e. District Health Officer / Chief Medical Officer of a district and Municipal health Officer of a Municipal Corporation / Municipality every month in a given format (attached).

For the purpose of case notification, a TB case is defined as follows:

- A patient diagnosed with at least one sputum specimen positive for acid fast bacilli, or Culture-positive for Mycobacterium tuberculosis, or RNTCP endorsed Rapid Diagnostic molecular test positive for tuberculosis
  OR

- A patient diagnosed clinically as a case of tuberculosis, without microbiologic confirmation, and initiated on anti-TB drugs.

For the purpose of this notification, healthcare providers will include clinical establishments run or managed by the Government (including local authorities), private or NGO sectors and/or individual practitioners.

For more detailed information, the concerned State TB Officers / District TB Officers, whose details are available on www.tbcindia.nic.in, may be contacted.

End: As mentioned

(Manoj Sinha)
Under Secretary to the Government of India

Copy for immediate further necessary action, to:

1) All Principal Secretaries / Secretaries of Health of States / UTs
2) All Directors of Health Services of States / UTs
3) All State TB Officers of States / UTs

With the request to kindly immediately bring this order to the notice of all concerned for compliance, in their respective State / UT

Contd/2
NORMS AND BASIS OF COSTING FOR RNTCP

These are indicative norms and may be used as a guide to prepare annual action plans and budgets. These may not be deemed to be limiting factors and States may provide justification to NHM/NPCC/CTD in case they need to incur expenses over and above these norms. For North-Eastern states (Arunachal Pradesh, Assam, Nagaland, Mizoram, Meghalaya, Manipur, Tripura and Sikkim), these norms would be applicable at the rate of 1.3 times as compared to the rest of the country except for the expenditure under the head “Contractual Services” or contractual staff in other heads.

Norms and Basis of Costing for RNTCP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Norms</th>
<th>Basis of Costing (Unit cost)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Civil Works</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Designated Microscopy Centre (DMC)—1 DMC per 1 Lakh population.</td>
<td>Initial Establishment / Refurbishment / Upgradation / Maintenance of Civil work to be carried out as per the rates prescribed by the PWD or Cell/Division/Corporation/Wing for Infrastructure Development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(In tribal/hilly/difficult areas 1/50,000 population). States can relax norms in case of additional requirement of DMC based on geographical or technical considerations and may consider to have DMC at all health facilities, if required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tuberculosis Unit (TU) – 1 per 200,000 (1.5 to 2.5 lakh range) population for rural and urban population and 1/100,000 (0.75 to 1.25 lakh) population in hilly/tribal/difficult areas with the overall aim to align with NHM BPMU for optimum resource utilization and appropriate monitoring.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DTC 1 per revenue district / NHM District Programme Management Unit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• DRTB Centre (formerly DOTS plus site):</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Nodal: 1 per million population</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o District level: 1 per district (4-5 beds/OPD based)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Additional or increase beds if DRTB patient load is more.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• State Drug Store (SDS): 1 per 50 Million population</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• For civil work, plumbing, electrical and other repairs for facilities/structures under RNTCP like STC, STDC, SDS, IRL, NAAT Labs, C&amp;DST lab, DRTB Centre, DTC, DDS, TU, DMC etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Laboratory materials</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lab consumables for DMCs, NAAT, Culture / DST laboratories, STDCs, NRLs and IRLs to be procured.</td>
<td>The costing is based on presumptive TB and DR-TB examination in a year, estimated based on consumption of previous year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The detailed list of laboratory material is given in the RNTCP laboratory QA protocol / programme website.</td>
<td>The State Health Society/District Health Society may have the flexibility of proportionately increasing the expenditure on laboratory consumables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Funds to be budgeted based on the work-load, central supplies of lab consumables and other projects and trends of expenditure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3 Honorarium/ Counseling charges

- Incentive to informant for referral of presumptive TB patients to public health facility are to be given on diagnosis of TB
- There is no upper cap of honorarium for treatment support.
- The honorarium / counselling charges are to be paid to volunteers supervising drug sensitive or drug resistant TB patients for public sector or private sector patients.
- The honorarium/counselling charges for provision of treatment support will be paid only to such workers who are not salaried employees of the Central/State Government. This would include among others Anganwadi workers, trained dais, village health guides, community volunteers, ASHA, private providers, private chemists, family members etc.
- For active TB case finding activities, honorarium will be paid to the volunteer for house to house visit or visit to high risk area

- Incentives to informant for notification
  - Rs. 500 for referral of presumptive TB patient to public health facility and diagnosis as TB
- Honorarium to treatment supporter to be disbursed upon completion or cure of TB patient as below
  - Rs. 1000 for Drug Susceptibility TB Patients
  - Rs. 5000 (Rs. 2000 for IP and Rs. 3000 for CP) for Drug Resistant TB Patients (including shorter regimen, MDR and XDR TB patients or as per latest programme guidelines)
- Rs. 25 per injection prick
- Volunteer supporting active TB case finding for house to house visit or visit to high risk area may be paid an honorarium as decided by the State NHM.

### 4 Advocacy Communication Social Mobilization (ACSM)

The ACSM campaign would be for all the stakeholders including the different target groups i.e., medical professionals, paramedical, patients, relatives of patients and community. This includes various activities like patient provider meeting, community meeting, CME, communication facilitator cost, print media, electronic media, social media, activities in school / educational institutions, advocacy meetings, cost for communication between stakeholders, campaign for intensified case finding, community radio, PRI involvement, involvement of FBOs, activities during World TB Day/ week, nukkad nataks, street plays, puppet shows, brand ambassadors, activities targeting universal access, special population like migrants, tribal and slums, TBHIV, MDR-TB, etc. Funds include cost of IEC Agency to hire for local need based ACSM state level initiatives

- Budget for ACSM activities at State and District level would be as per ACSM plan (to be prepared and submitted along with PIP).
- ACSM activities to be planned as per the need and recent updates in programme strategies

### 5 Equipment Maintenance

Maintenance/upgradation/calibration costs for Laboratory equipment, office equipment like computers, photocopier, fax, ECG Machines etc. and IT equipment (like PDA /handheld devise/tablets/phablets) are included under this head.

- Maintenance costs for the equipment should be estimated on the basis of the current market cost
- For budgeting purpose, maintenance cost should be considered up to 15% of the cost of the equipment or tendered rates (whichever is available).
- The maintenance funds can be pooled at state or district level as per the requirements of the State.

### 6 Training

- The training of STO/DTOs will be organized in coordination with central institutes / CTD. The

- Training to be planned as Initial Training, Retraining and Update training.
other categories of staff will be trained at State/District/Sub-district level. It also includes sensitization. The training will be held in batches and cost for each batch of training for different category of staff is calculated applying the various approved norms.

- The STOs/Dy STO/DTOs/ MO-STC / STDC faculty/Microbiologist/STC, STDC, IRL, SDS staff, RNTCP contractual staff, any personnel participating in any of the RNTCP activities will be allowed travel expenditure as per norm mentioned under this head.
- The costs include hiring of venue, organization charges, and honorarium for trainers, TA/DA, course material and refreshment or for any activity related to training.
- State level facilities includes State TB cell, STDC, SDS, IRL, C&DST lab, DRTB Centre for all the financial heads including training.
- The budget for training to be planned based on the training load, additional trainings for newer initiatives and revision of guidelines.
- The norms for TA/DA, Honorarium, Refreshment, Course Material, Vehicle hiring, Accommodation, Venue Hiring Incidental expenses should be as per State / NHM norms.

### 7 Vehicle operation (POL & maintenance)

- Vehicles used for supervisory visits by DTO, MO-TC and contractual staff under RNTCP are budgeted on the basis of: Kilometers traveled/day, number of days in a month and current cost of POL.
- Total amount includes repairs, spare parts, insurance, tax, helmets, PUC, essential accessories, service charges, etc. which may be required for the maintenance of vehicles.
- Higher amount can be allowed based on fuel cost, distance travelled and fuel efficiency of vehicle.
- Appropriate travel documentation including Advanced Tour Planning, tour dairy/report, vehicle log book is to be ensured.
- In case of increase in POL costs, corresponding increase in norms for vehicle operations & maintenance will be made at Central level from time to time.

### 8 Vehicle hiring

Vehicles are hired where RNTCP or state government vehicle are not available for supervisory visits. Appropriate documentation for supervisory visits to be ensured. MOTC/ Officer /Staff having NHM hired vehicle available for supervision & monitoring, cannot hire additional vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Staff</th>
<th>No of vehicles eligible</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PPM Coordinators – state level</td>
<td>1 (up to 15 days a month)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV - TB Coordinators State level</td>
<td>1 (up to 15 days a month)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Cost of POL and maintenance should be taken as per actuals or State / NHM norms.
- In case of 4 wheelers, funds for vehicle operation are only provided to districts which have four-wheelers from system/programme rather than hired vehicles.
- Vehicle operation cost (POL only) support can be extended as per actuals for non-programme / personal vehicles used for programme purpose (if programme vehicle has not been provided) as per actual cost within the monthly limit as prescribed by programme.

- Vehicle hire (inclusive of POL/driver and all costs except toll tax)
- Cost of vehicle hire should be taken as per State / NHM norms.
State TB Cell 1 for States with population <10 million (3 for state with population >30 million & 2 for states with population 10-30 million) per month

STDC 1 per month

DTO 1 per month (2 for type A districts)

MO-TC 1 (up to 7 days per month)

CTD Upto 6 vehicles per month

Vehicle hire is allowed only for the days of supervision & monitoring or official visits. State level officers & Coordinators can hire vehicle for the days of supervision & monitoring visits.

**9 Public-private Mix: (PP/NGO Support)**

Activities included in this head are payments of NGO/PP schemes grant-in-aid, activities undertaken for involvement of NGO/PPs, Cost of the state and district level PPM Coordinators and TBHVs, and costs for pilots / innovations for improving TB control at central / state / district / sub-district level.

NGO/Agencies/Institutes should be registered under State Societies Act/ Societies Act/ Companies Act or Trusts Act with their Memorandum /Articles of Association expressly stating that the Company/Society has been formed for purpose of non-profit and has its independent sources of funding and is not solely dependent on any programme funds. Private practitioner / clinic / dispensary / hospital / agency / individual / institute / organization should be registered with the appropriate authority.

- NGOs/PP working for or planning to work for TB Control Programme are required to follow the NGO/PP guidelines of RNTCP.
- Out of the total available budget under this head, up to 10% can be utilized for activities involving promotion of NGO / PP involvement, up to 30% can be utilized for piloting / innovations activities which are included in the action plan and approved from CTD.
- Private Provider Engagement using incentives, public private support agency, ensure free diagnostic tests and drugs linkages for access to diagnostics and drugs including reimbursement.
- Norms for various schemes are as provided in the latest National Guideline on Partnership issued by RNTCP.

Support to Hospitals with only PG degree / DNB courses (other than those included in medical college task force mechanisms):

These hospitals / health facilities to be included in various NGO/PP schemes based on the functions like TB diagnostic facility/ DMC, DOT Adherence, Notification etc.

Private Provider Engagement

- Cost of free Diagnostic tests and drugs either through reimbursement or strategic purchasing as per actual costs,
- The incentives of Rs. 1000 will be provided to Private providers for notification and reporting of treatment outcome. Incentives will be given in two installments (Rs. 500 at notification and Rs. 500 on reporting treatment outcome)
- Public Private Support Agency (PPSA) Cost for notification of patient, end-to-end Coordination / Engagement with providers and / or patient support as per tendered rates
- Cost of linkages of drug or diagnostic access & reimbursement / voucher systems as decided by the State NHM.
- Incentives for private pharmacist / doctor supporting dispensing drugs from their level may be planned for dispensing/storing and for supply chain management.

**10 Medical Colleges**

- Medical colleges will be provided funds through concerned State/District Health-TB Control Societies for activities relating to referral of cases and treatment, operational research, sensitization and advocacy among the staff, faculty and medical
- Provision has been made for need based training / sensitization of resident doctors / faculty / interns/ staff of all departments in RNTCP. It is expected that 50 residents/year/medical college would require this training. Budget may be based on training plan to be submitted at
students.

- National/ Zonal/State Task forces have been formed for medical college involvement under RNTCP. The cost for travel and per diem for the Chairman and members of these task forces for attending task forces meetings and follow-up visits to the medical colleges in their jurisdiction would be borne by the respective health societies. The organizational cost for such meetings would also be borne by respective Societies.

- Meetings /Visits to be conducted by the Task forces will be as under:
  - NTF - Whenever called for ZTF meetings
  - ZTF- Quarterly meetings of ZTF and all STF within the zone will be visited once in six months
  - STF- Quarterly meeting of STF and all medical colleges in the state will be visited once a year

- A thesis grant of Rs 30,000 for research on RNTCP priority areas will be approved by State OR Committee at an average of one thesis per medical college per year in the state. All post-graduate degree / diploma students undertaking thesis as a part of their MCI recognized studies will be eligible for thesis grant.

- Provision is also available for support to conferences, symposiums, panel discussions and workshops organized at National and state levels and at level of Medical college.
  - At the National level- Rs. 4 lakhs per conference for 8 conferences annually;
  - At the state level - Rs. 1 lakh/- per conference for 4 conferences annually.
  - Sponsorship of plenary session on RNTCP in seminars / CME /Workshops up to Rs.10, 000/ annually for a medical college.

- Organizational cost for each meeting of Task Force and operation research will be as per norms of training head.

- Travel costs and per diems for participation in STF/ZTF/NTF, for attending the trainings, participation in meetings and internal / central level evaluations / appraisals will be borne under this head. TA/DA norms as per the training head.

- STF Chairman – office and miscellaneous costs.

### Norms used for guiding the budget are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stationary and Misc Fund for ZTF offices</td>
<td>Rs 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stationary and Misc. Fund for STF office</td>
<td>Rs 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous – core committee expenses, postage, communication, fax, etc. per medical college</td>
<td>Rs 10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allowance to existing manpower with STF Chairperson for clerical assistance and data management</td>
<td>Up to Rs. 1000 per month</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These are norms for budgeting purpose and travel cost will be as per the actual at the rates / norms as mentioned in training head. Accommodation to be done by organizers for residential meetings from this head as per the local cost and DA to be paid to the participant as per the norm of training head except for ZTF / NTF for which norms are stated in this head itself.

### Office Operation (Miscellaneous)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Office operation expenditure includes janitorial expenses, electricity, telephone bills, data user charges, video conferencing charges, internet cost, fax bills, postage/courier, office stationery, office furniture for STCs/STDCs/DRTB Centers/C&amp;DST laboratories/DTCs/ TB Units/DMCs/NAAT Labs, display boards, repair of furniture, hiring of daily</td>
<td>Only costs not covered by State/Districts budgets will be provided under project funds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
wage labour for loading and unloading of drugs, sputum transportation box, drug boxes for Cat IV / V, recruitment / procurement / EOI / RFP advertisements, transportation of drugs from State drug store to district store, office rental, etc. Original software license including annual renewal, if any, for each computer system (Operating System, Office, Anti-virus etc.), for database (at national level) and for firewall (at national level). Internet connectivity and operating cost of PDA/tablet computer will be included in this head as per actuals.

## Contractual Services

### State Level:

1. **Surveillance, M&E and Research Unit:**
   - 1 Epidemiologist (Asst. Programme Officer)
   - 1 NIKSHAY Operator
   - Data Analyst (only existing; no new post to be created)
   - Driver (only existing; no new post to be created)

2. **Diagnosis & Treatment (DSTB & DRTB):**
   - 1 Medical Officer – STC
   - 1 HIV-TB Coordinator
   - 1 DR-TB Coordinator

3. **Partnership, ACSM & Patient support unit:**
   - 1 State PPM Coordinator
   - 1 State ACSM Officer

4. **Finance & PSM unit:**
   - 1 Technical Officer - Procurement & Logistic Personnel
   - 1 Accounts officer
   - 1 Secretarial Assistant

### STDC

- 1 Epidemiologist
- 1 Medical Officer
- 1 NIKSHAY Operator
- 1 Secretarial assistant

### IRL:

- 1 Microbiologist
- 1 Microbiologist - EQA
- 1 Sr. lab technical EQA
- 5 Sr. lab technician (Additional positions based on workload)
- 1 NIKSHAY Operator,
- 1 Lab attendant
- 1 Bio-Medical engineer only for states with more than 5 C&DST labs

### Culture & DST Lab (without IRL)

- 1 Microbiologist
- 5 Sr. lab technician (Additional positions based on workload)
- 1 NIKSHAY Operator
- 1 Laboratory Assistant
- (Staff in C&DST lab to be increased based on the workload and additional technologies being used, number)

### State Drug Store (SDS)

## Contractual Staff (State Level):

- Compensation package for the contractual staff will be decided by the respective State based on state specific situation, job contents, job responsibilities and compensation for similar positions in other programme under NHM.
- The existing staff will get annual increment based on the satisfactory performance at a rate decided by the State NHM.
- Loyalty bonus: As per NHM Norms.
- Contract period will be as per the State NHM decision.
- Contracts will be renewed by the society based on satisfactory performance.
- The TA/DA norms will be as per the NHM guidelines. DA (daily allowance for travel) is only to be released against appropriate travel documentation. Where eligible such DA may be paid under State Government rules or as mentioned in supervision & monitoring head.
- A fixed allowance of Rs. 1500 per month / as per State Norms will be given to contractual staff at TU/DMCs in notified tribal / hilly / difficult areas.
- The Performance (Workload) based incentives will be given to the contractual staff at State / district / sub-district level. Decisions related to performance-based incentives would be centered on core performance indicators as below. These indicators are based on consideration of workload to the Staff also. The indicators would be changed as per the programme priority time to time from the Central level. Indicators targets can be revised by the State a priori, depending on the variation in epidemiology of district.

### Senior TB Treatment Supervisor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. No.</th>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>% increase in total TB notification (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;10%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10-20%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;20%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>No. of health facilities to be supervised by the TB Unit (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Pharmacist cum Storekeeper
1 Store Assistant (Additional post if >1800 Cat IV/V monthly boxes preparation per month)

**Nodal DR TB Centre**
1 Medical Officer
1 Statistical Assistant
1 Counsellor

**District level:**
1 Medical Officer (DTC)
1 Senior DRTB TBHV Supervisor
1 District PPM/ACSM Coordinator
1 District Programme Coordinator
1 District Pharmacist (30% of DDSs)
1 District Accountant
Driver (*only existing; no new post to be created*)

Senior TB Laboratory Supervisor:
1 per 5 lakh population (1 per 2.5 lakh population for tribal/hilly/difficult areas).

Senior Treatment Supervisor (STS) (1 per 1.5 to 2.5 lakh to be aligned with blocks for optimum resource utilization and appropriate monitoring) (*In case of tribal/hilly/difficult areas 1 per 0.75 to 1.25 lakh population to be aligned with blocks*)
(additional STS if >300 cases registered in public sector annually in a TU; additional STS if >50 private health establishments registered in NIKSHAY in a TU and >200 TB patients notified from these private health establishments annually in a TU)

TBHV: 1 per lakh urban aggregate population in the district

Laboratory Technician (upto 30% of the DMCs) 1 Lab Technicians (1 per health facility having a lab and a microscope).
Health system approach as per NHM policy to be applied by bringing together all facility based service deliver HR together and implement IPHS and workload as the basis to determine the number of positions).

* Existing Data Entry Operators at State and District level are redesignated as NIKSHAY Operator at respective levels.

**Medical College**
1 Medical Officer
1 Lab Technician
1 TB-HV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of TB laboratories to be supervised (microscopy &amp; molecular diagnostics) in defined area (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-10</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>% of increase in examination rate of presumptive TB patients in a year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;5%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-10%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;10%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drug Susceptibility Testing of notified TB patients in defined area (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;80%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80-90%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;90%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>% of notified TB patients with known HIV status (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;70%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70-85%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;85%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>% health facilities with sample transport facilities available [% of non-DMC PHIs with sample transport facilities + % DMC with sample transport facilities to molecular diagnostics]/2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;75%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
District DR-TB Centre:
1 Counsellor (Health system approach as per NHM policy to be applied by bringing together all facility based service deliver HR together and implement IPHS and workload as the basis to determine the number of positions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. No.</th>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>No. of TB patients in care in a year (public + private) in area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;100</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100-200</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;200</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>No. of health facilities to be supervised in area (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5-20</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;20</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>% of Children (&lt;6 years) household contacts of pulmonary TB patients initiated on INH chemoprophylaxis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;80%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80-90%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;90%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Adherence score of TB patients on 99 DOTS (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;70%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70-80%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;80%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>% of eligible patients and treatment supporters provided financial support under RNTCP through DBT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;50%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50-75%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;75%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TB – Health Visitor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. No.</th>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>% increase in total TB notification (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;15%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15-25%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;25%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Treatment success rate of new TB patients in TB unit (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;70%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70-85%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;85%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>% of eligible patients, treatment supporters and private provider given financial support under RNTCP through DBT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

District TB Centre and State TB Cell
The Performance (Workload) based incentives will be given to the District TB Centre Staff and State TB Cell Staff based on following indicators.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. No.</th>
<th>Performance Indicators</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>% increase in total TB notification (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;15%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15-25%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;25%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Treatment success rate of new TB patients in TB unit (public + private)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;70%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70-85%</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;85%</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>% of eligible patients, treatment supporters and private provider given financial support under RNTCP through DBT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Drug Susceptibility Testing of notifiedTB patients in TB unit (public + private)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Total Scores</th>
<th>Incentives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;50%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0% of total remuneration for staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-75%</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>15% of total remuneration for staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;75%</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>30% of total remuneration for staff</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. % Human Resource in place at respective state / district level

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Total Scores</th>
<th>Incentives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;80%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80-90%</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;90%</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Incentive Structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. No.</th>
<th>Performance Grade</th>
<th>Total Scores</th>
<th>Incentives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Grade A</td>
<td>&gt;40</td>
<td>30% of total remuneration for staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Grade B</td>
<td>20 – 30</td>
<td>15% of total remuneration for staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Grade C</td>
<td>10-20</td>
<td>5% increment will not be given</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13 Printing

Printing of stationery items such as treatment cards, patient identity card, TB register, laboratory form, referral form, notification form, health establishment registration form, transfer form, training modules, quarterly report format, research reports, Action Plans and other formats required for Programme implementation at State/District level. Modules, registers, guidelines, etc. needs to be undertaken at state level while the forms, identity cards, reporting formats etc. to be district level printing. Printing of prototype materials, RNTCP materials, perf reports, quarterly / annual / bi-annual reports of performance and its dissemination

- Budget for printing at State and District level would be as per printing plan (to be prepared and submitted along with PIP).
- Printing to be planned as per the need and recent updates in programme strategies

14 Research & Studies & Consultancy

There are certain studies like disease burden studies including prevalence surveys, mortality surveys, inventory studies, ARTI surveys, social assessment studies, IEC impact assessment studies, and drug resistance surveillance studies which will be undertaken by CTD and Central Institutes or appropriate agencies / institutes. Additionally operational research proposals on identified priority areas will be invited from State level and from the Medical Colleges. Capacity building programmes for Operation research for

The priority areas for operations research and formats for proposals are given in the website www.tbcindia.gov.in. The research may be initiated at district, states or medical colleges. Proposed studies and their estimated costs may be included in the Annual Action Plans.

- Research proposals up to Rs 2 lakh may be approved by State OR Committee,
- Proposals up to Rs. 5 Lakhs may be approved by the ZTF (for medical colleges)
stakeholders to be carried out. National Operational Research cell supported by HR as mentioned in contractual salary head. Proposals approved by State level OR committee / Zonal level OR committee / Central TB Division / National OR cell to be funded. Consultancy charges for procurement of drugs, lab testing charges for drug quality assurance, agency fees for advocacy / media management campaigns, consultancy cost for agency developing web based DOTS plus recording & reporting software, MIS system with web based case based reporting system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>15 Procurement of Drugs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drugs required during TB treatment are being procured centrally. They are not to be procured at the State and Districts levels except with written approval from CTD.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>16 Procurement of Vehicles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>New Four Wheelers:</strong> All districts are expected to hire four wheeler except where procurement of four wheeler has been specifically approved in writing for hilly/tribal/difficult districts or in special extra-ordinary situations. These are to be procured to be procured following General Financial Rules 2017.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Two Wheelers:</strong> 1 Two wheeler vehicle for mobility for each STS, STL5, DOTS plus &amp; TBHIV Supervisor, PPM Coordinator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Replacement:</strong> Replacement of four wheeler vehicles will be permitted for notified tribal and hilly / difficult districts. Purchase of new four wheeler vehicles will be done in consultation with CTD. Vehicles due for replacement should have completed 6.5 years or 150,000 Kms whichever is later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Replacement for 2 wheelers</strong> may be allowed if they have completed 6 years or 100,000 kms whichever is later. Condemnation rules of State Government will be followed, where applicable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>17 Procurement of Equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lab Equipment:</strong> Binocular Microscopes &amp; Fluorescent LED based microscope are being provided by CTD for training institution and for service delivery in RNTCP areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Culture and Sensitivity Equipment:</strong> Will be procured by CTD, wherever approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Office Equipment:</strong> Office equipment will be procured by States/districts for new units planned under the project (State TB cell, DTC, SDS, IRL and DRTB Centre) and for replacing them which are more than 5-7 years old and are not functional.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Proposal above Rs 5 lakhs will be forwarded to CTD and put up to the the National OR Committee for review and recommendation for approval to CTD

Procurement of drugs will be done from the Centre as per the appropriate financial guidelines
Procurement of drugs from the State will be done only in case of permission from Central TB Division after following appropriate financial guidelines

- Vehicle procurement to be done at a tendered rate or State or NHM norms prevailing in the State.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>17 Procurement of Equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lab Equipment:</strong> Binocular Microscopes &amp; Fluorescent LED based microscope are being provided by CTD for training institution and for service delivery in RNTCP areas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Culture and Sensitivity Equipment:</strong> Will be procured by CTD, wherever approved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Office Equipment:</strong> Office equipment will be procured by States/districts for new units planned under the project (State TB cell, DTC, SDS, IRL and DRTB Centre) and for replacing them which are more than 5-7 years old and are not functional.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- As per the market rate, State/NHM fixed rates of procurement equipment, tendered rates and to be procured following General Financial Rules 2017
Condemnation rules of State / Local self-Government to be followed.
Every district will be provided with photo-copyer, if not already available.
Computer system with internet, Fax machine for every DTC, IRL, Culture DST laboratory, SDS, STDC, DRTB Centre (DOTS plus site), NRLs, and all STCs. STCs will have computer systems for Type A will have 3, STCs Type B will have 2 and Type C will have 1. Similarly bigger districts DTC Type A will have 2, while Type B & C will have 1 system. States with 15 or more medical colleges to have provision of one computer system for STF Chairperson office.
Every state Type A /B/C will be eligible for LCD with laptop system 2/1/1 respectively to be placed in STC/STDC. Urban / districts with more than 40 lakh population are eligible for LCD with laptop. SDS and DDS/DTC level Refrigerator – 1 per district/SDS;
Equipment & software for bar-code reading: 1 per SDS & 1 per DDS;
Barcode printer: 1 per SDS;
PDA (handheld devise): 1 per DTC, TU, DMC, PHI Staff.
Biometric finger printing device as USB attachment with PDA (UIDAI Approved)
Biometric attendance equipment 1 per State TB Cell, STDC, State Drug Store, DTCs, Culture DST Labs, DR-TB Centre, District Drug Store.
Video-conferencing unit: 1 per CTD / NRL / STC;
Office equipment for CTD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>18 Patient support &amp; transportation charges:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tribal/Hilly/Difficult areas</strong>: All TB Patients in tribal / hilly/ difficult areas to be provided to cover travel costs of patient and attendant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrition support</strong>: Financial incentive to TB patient through DBT for Nutritional support, to prevent catastrophic expenditure and Incentivize treatment adherence. The States/UTs may provide this incentive to the notified patients either in cash through Aadhar linked DBT mechanism or in-kind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sample transportation (for diagnosis or follow up of drug sensitive or drug resistant TB patients)</strong>: Sample transportation from non-DMC PHI to DMC or DTC / DMC / Collection centre to Molecular lab (CBNAAT) / Culture &amp; DST lab by non-salaried Treatment supporter / community volunteers / govt staff without provision of TA / Patient attendant / courier agency within the pre-decided time limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Travel cost to Presumptive TB or DR TB patients travel to DTC / Collection centre for Culture / DST or molecular test (for diagnosis or for follow up)</strong>: Presumptive travel to DTC / Collection centre to be paid as per the actual with public transport. It includes patient travel for follow up also</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 18 Tribal/Hilly/Difficult areas**: Patients from tribal / hilly/ difficult areas to be provided an aggregate amount of Rs. 750 to cover travel costs of patient and attendant. |
| **Nutrition support** at an average of Rs. 500 per month till completion of treatment. |
| **Sample collection and transport (for diagnosis or follow up of drug sensitive or drug resistant TB patients)**: Through volunteer / Govt. Staff – As per actual cost per visit through public transport (Within district, upto Rs. 400 per visit; Outside district upto Rs. 1000 per visit) or norms approved by the State Health Society for such activity Through courier / post – As per actual cost of post / courier |
| **Travel cost to Presumptive TB or DR TB patients travel to DTC / Collection centre for Culture / DST or molecular test**: to be paid as per the actual with public transport or maximum upto norms approved by the State Health Society for such visit |
| **Travel cost to DR-TB patient to District DR-TB Centre or Nodal DR-TB Centre (for diagnosis or for follow up)**: As per actual cost per visit through public transport (Within district upto Rs. 400 per visit; Outside district upto Rs. 1000 per visit) or norms approved by the State Health Society for such visit |
Travel cost to Drug resistant TB patients: DRTB patient travelling to District or Nodal DRTB Centre or to district for treatment initiation /follow-ups /adverse reaction management during the treatment along with one accompanying person / attendant. Travel cost to be reimbursed as per actuals maximum up to equivalent of travel cost with public transport or norms approved by society for such visits to be provided. Patient support for investigations will be reimbursed for tests which are not available in government hospital and on prior approval

ICT based Treatment Adherence Support:
This may include cost of software solution, recurring cost of communications (SMS, call), printing (sleeves) and supply chain.

19 Supervision & Monitoring
Activities including component of supervision, monitoring, evaluations, appraisals, review meetings

Includes cost of TA/DA (except for training) for STOs, STDC staff, IRL Microbiologist, DTOs, MO-TC and all RNTCP contractual staff.

Internal Evaluations: All districts to be covered at least once in 3-4 years and All states to be covered under CIE at least once in 3 years.
Norms for SIE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Population in million</th>
<th>Districts per quarter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 30</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;30 to 70</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;70</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Call Centre with TOLL FREE number to be established for patient management and awareness. Data cost, call centre executives and client relationship management (CRM) software with communication costs to be managed from centre support.

Central / State level IE: Mobility support, Refreshment cost, external members residential accommodation, material cost etc. to be budgeted

Local hiring of vehicles for mobility support, refreshment costs, accommodation, TA/DA would be as per approved norms mentioned in training head or as approved by NHM/State.

Only costs not covered by State/Districts budgets will be provided under RNTCP.